

# Tamilnadu Water Supply and Drainage Board

Hogenakkal Water Supply and Fluorosis Mitigation Project

Package - IV



Volume – 3

## **Specifications for Mechanical, Electrical and Instrumentation**

**Project Maintenance Division  
Hosur.**

## **STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

### **CONTENTS LIST**

<b>PART C</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>PLANT MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP</b>
<b>PART D</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>MECHANICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>
<b>PART F</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>
<b>PART G</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>INSTRUMENTATION STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>

## **CONTENTS LIST**

<b>Item No</b>	<b>PART C – PLANT MATERIALS &amp; WORKMANSHIP</b>	<b>Page. No</b>
<b>C1.0</b>	<b>MECHANICAL &amp; ELECTRICAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>21</b>
C1.1	Introduction	21
C1.2	Standard specifications	22
C1.3	Plant design and life	23
C1.4	Substances and products	23
C1.5	Workmanship	24
C1.6	Welding	24
C1.7	Castings	24
C1.8	Forgings	25
C1.9	Non-metallic materials	25
C1.10	Nuts, bolts, studs and washers	25
C1.11	Threads	26
C1.12	Guards for moving parts	26
C1.13	Safeguarding of plant	27
C1.14	Rating plates, name plates and labels	27
C1.15	Lubrication	27
C1.16	Gaskets and joint rings	29
C1.17	Electroplating, galvanising and sherardizing	29
C1.18	Noise	29
C1.19	Vibration	30
C1.20	Access steelwork	31
C1.21	Handrailing	31
C1.22	Machinery, lifting and dismantling	32
C1.23	Seals	32
C1.24	Bearings	32
C1.25	Gearboxes	33
C1.26	Safety signs	33
C1.27	Corrosion and erosion	33

C1.28	Precautions against damp	33
C2.0	<b>PAINTING AND PROTECTION</b>	34
C2.1	Scope	34
C2.2	General	34
C2.3	Coating systems	35
C2.4	Fusion-bonded epoxy powder coatings	35
C2.5	Coating system for electrical enclosures	36
C2.6	Defects	37
C2.7	Colour coding	37

### **List of Tables**

Table A	Required coating systems and minimum coating thickness for plant and equipment	38
Table B	Required heat-resistant coating systems for steelwork	39
Table C	Colour coding for plant and equipment	39
Table D	Identification colours for pipes	40
Table E	Identification colours for pipes – chlorine	41
Table F	Identification colours for pipes – hydrated lime	42
Table G	Identification colours for pipes – aluminium sulphate	43
Table H	Identification colours for pipes – miscellaneous	44

<b>ITEM NO</b>	<b>CONTENTS LIST</b>	<b>Page. No</b>
	<b>PART D - MECHANICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>	
<b>D1.0</b>	<b>PUMPING PLANT</b>	<b>46</b>
D1.1	Definitions	46
D1.2	Pump design and layout	47
D1.2.1	General	47
D1.2.2	Driving arrangements	47
D1.2.3	Seals, glands and sleeves	47
D1.2.4	Raw water pumps	48
D1.2.5	Bearings	48
D1.2.6	Balancing	48
D1.2.7	NPSH	48
D1.2.8	Velocities in pump branches	48
D1.2.9	Priming	48
D1.2.10	Baseplates	49
D1.2.11	Pump performance	49
D1.3	End-suction pumps	50
D1.4	Concentric casing mixed flow and axial flow pumps	50
D1.4.1	General	50
D1.4.2	Casings	50
D1.4.3	Impellers	51
D1.4.4	Shafts	51
D1.4.5	Bearings	51
D1.5	Multi-stage high-pressure pumps	52
D1.6	Vertical turbine (VT) pumps	52
D1.6.1	Discharge head and mounting plate	53
D1.6.2	Water-lubricated line-shaft bearings:	53
D1.6.3	Pump column pipe	54
D1.7	Double-entry split-casing pumps	54

D1.8	Submersible sump drainage pumps	55
D1.9	Progressive-cavity pumps	55
D1.10	Vacuum self-priming pumps	56
D1.11	Vacuum priming pumps	57
D1.11.1	General	57
D1.11.2	Casings	57
D1.11.3	Rotors	58
D1.11.4	Pump shafts	58
D1.11.5	Bearings	58
<b>D2.0</b>	<b>PIPEWORK</b>	<b>58</b>
D2.1	Pipework within structures	58
D2.2	High-pressure pipes and fittings (over 24 bar)	59
D2.3	Dismantling joints, flexible couplings and flange adaptors	60
<b>D3.0</b>	<b>VALVES</b>	<b>61</b>
D3.1	General	61
D3.2	Gate valves (Sluice valves)	61
D3.3	High-Pressure gate valves(over 24bar)	62
D3.4	Reflux/Check valves	62
D3.5	Butterfly valves	62
D3.6	Pressure and flow control valves	63
D3.6.1	General	63
D3.6.2	Altitude valves	63
D3.6.3	Flow-control valves	63
D3.6.4	Pressure-sustaining valves	64
D3.6.5	Pressure-relief valves	64
D3.6.6	Pressure-reducing valves	64
D3.6.7	Automatic air-relief valves	65
D3.6.8	Ball float valves	66
D3.6.9	Plug valves	66
D3.6.10	Diaphragm valves	67
D3.6.11	Ball valves	67
D3.6.12	Float-controlled valves (delayed-action type)	67

D3.7	Penstocks (Sluice gates) and headstocks	68
D3.7.1	General	68
D3.7.2	Penstocks — cast iron	68
D3.7.3	Penstocks — plastic	69
D3.7.4	Headstocks	69
D3.8	Valve Operation	69
D3.8.1	Shafts and caps for tee-key operated valves	69
D3.8.2	Manual operating mechanisms	70
D3.8.3	Solenoid-operated valves	70
D3.8.4	Pneumatic actuators – on/off type	71
D3.8.5	Pneumatic actuators – modulating type	72
D3.8.6	Electric actuators	72
D3.9	Valve packaging and installation	74
D3.9.1	Marking and packing	74
D3.9.2	Valve handling	74
D3.9.3	Valve installation	74
<b>D4.0</b>	<b>COMPRESSORS AND SURGE VESSELS</b>	<b>75</b>
D4.1	Compressors for surge vessels	75
D4.2	Surge vessels	76
<b>D5.0</b>	<b>CRANES</b>	<b>76</b>
D5.1	Electric overhead travelling cranes	76
D5.2	Hand-operated overhead cranes	78
<b>D6.0</b>	<b>COMPRESSED AIR PLANT</b>	<b>78</b>
D6.1	General	78
D6.2	Air intakes	78
D6.3	Reciprocating compressors	79
D6.4	After-coolers	79
D6.5	Air receivers	80
D6.6	Air dryers	80
D6.7	Air pipework	81
D6.8	Air isolating valves	81
<b>D7.0</b>	<b>FANS</b>	<b>82</b>

D7.1	General	82
D7.2	Ceiling fans	83
D7.3	Centrifugal fans	83
D7.4	Axial-flow fans	83
D7.5	Propeller fans	84
D7.6	In-line centrifugal and mixed-flow fans	84
D7.7	Mechanical roof-extract units	84
D7.8	Protectively-coated fans and fans for corrosive or hazardous applications	84
D7.9	Air filters	85
<b>D8.0</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS</b>	<b>85</b>
D8.1	Automatic in-line strainers	85
D8.2	Access steelwork	86
D8.3	Handrailing	86
D8.4	Manually-raked inclined bar screens	87
D8.5	Surge analysis and report	88
D8.6	Stoplogs	89
D8.6.1	Stoplog lifting beam	89
D8.6.2	Stoplog hoist and monorail	90
D8.6.3	Stoplog storage	90



<b>ITEM NO</b>	<b>CONTENTS LIST</b>	<b>Page. No</b>
	<b>PART F - ELECTRICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>	<b>92</b>
<b>F1.0</b>	<b>GENERAL</b>	<b>92</b>
F1.1	Regulations and Standards	<b>92</b>
F1.2	Reference Standards	<b>92</b>
F1.3	Abbreviations of electrical terms	<b>100</b>
F1.4	Polarity	<b>100</b>
F1.5	Voltage and frequencies	<b>101</b>
F1.6	Units of measurement	<b>101</b>
F1.7	Electricity supplies	<b>102</b>
F1.8	Electrical safety	<b>102</b>
<b>F2.0</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL MOTORS</b>	<b>102</b>
F2.1	Motors	<b>102</b>
F2.1.1	Type	<b>102</b>
F2.1.2	Rating and duty	<b>102</b>
F2.1.3	Starting	<b>103</b>
F2.1.4	Windings and insulation	<b>103</b>
F2.1.5	Slip rings	<b>104</b>
F2.1.6	Degree of protection for motor enclosures	<b>104</b>
F2.1.7	Cooling	<b>104</b>
F2.1.8	Dimensions	<b>104</b>
F2.1.9	General constructional features	<b>104</b>
F2.1.10	Bearings — general	<b>105</b>
F2.1.11	Bearings - rolling-type bearings	<b>105</b>
F2.1.12	Bearings - plain bearings	<b>106</b>
F2.1.13	Balancing	<b>106</b>
F2.1.14	Noise levels	<b>106</b>
F2.1.15	Vibration levels	<b>106</b>
F2.1.16	Lifting facilities	<b>107</b>
F2.1.17	Temperature-monitoring devices	<b>107</b>
F2.1.18	Anti-condensation heaters	<b>107</b>
F2.1.19	Terminal boxes	<b>107</b>
F2.2	Hollow-shaft motor drives for borehole pumps	<b>108</b>
F2.3	Paint and Finish	<b>108</b>
F2.4	Tests	<b>108</b>

<b>F3.0</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMERS</b>	<b>109</b>
F3.1	Liquid-immersed power transformers	109
F3.1.1	Standards	109
F3.1.2	Service conditions	109
F3.1.3	Dielectric fluids	109
F3.1.4	Cooling method	109
F3.1.5	Tanks and radiators	109
F3.1.6	Cores	109
F3.1.7	Windings	110
F3.1.8	Tappings	110
F3.1.9	Off-circuit tap changing	110
F3.1.10	On-load tap changing	111
F3.1.11	Cable boxes	111
F3.1.12	Bushings	112
F3.1.13	Conservators	112
F3.1.14	Standard fittings	112
F3.1.15	Optional fittings	113
F3.1.16	Gas and oil surge (Buchholz) relay	113
F3.1.17	Winding temperature indicator	113
F3.1.18	Dielectric fluid temperature indicator	113
F3.1.19	Dehydrating breathers	113
F3.1.20	Pressure-relief device	113
F3.1.21	Drain valves	113
F3.1.22	Padlocks	114
F3.1.23	Rating and connection plates	114
F3.1.24	Painting	114
F3.1.25	Galvanising and zinc spray treatment	114
F3.2	Dry-type encapsulated winding (cast resin) power transformers	114
F3.2.1	Standards	114
F3.2.2	Service conditions	115
F3.2.3	Cores	115
F3.2.4	Windings	115
F3.2.5	Tappings	116
F3.2.6	Lifting	116
F3.2.7	Cable boxes	116
F3.2.8	Fittings	116
F3.2.9	Forced air cooling	117

F3.2.10	Enclosures	117
F3.2.11	Rating and connection plates	117
F3.3	Dry-type non-encapsulated winding (Class C) power transformers	117
F3.3.1	Standards	117
F3.3.2	Service conditions	117
F3.3.3	Cores	118
F3.3.4	Windings	118
F3.3.5	Tappings	119
F3.3.6	Lifting	119
F3.3.7	Cable boxes	119
F3.3.8	Fittings	119
F3.3.9	Forced air cooling	119
F3.3.10	Enclosures	120
F3.3.11	Anti-condensation heaters	120
F3.3.12	Rating and connection plates	120
<b>F4.0</b>	<b>ELECTRIC GENERATORS</b>	<b>120</b>
F4.1	Diesel generator sets — diesel engine	120
F4.1.1	General requirements	120
F4.1.2	Lubrication	121
F4.1.3	Cooling	121
F4.1.4	Drive belts	122
F4.1.5	Safety guards	122
F4.1.6	Protection devices	122
F4.1.7	Wiring	122
F4.1.8	Pipework	123
F4.1.9	Heaters	123
F4.1.10	Instrumentation	123
F4.1.11	Governing	123
F4.1.12	Exhaust system	123
F4.1.13	Starting systems	124
F4.1.14	Fuel system:	126
F4.2	Diesel generator sets — generator	126
F4.2.1	General requirements	126
F4.2.2	Excitation system	127
F4.2.3	Electrical insulation system	127
F4.2.4	Automatic voltage regulator	127
F4.3	Diesel generator sets — control system	128
F4.3.1	General requirements	128

F4.3.2	Control panel structure	128
F4.3.3	Generator output switchgear	128
F4.3.4	Indicating instruments	128
F4.3.5	Control switches	128
F4.3.6	Push-buttons	128
F4.3.7	Hand regulating controls	129
F4.3.8	Indicator lights	129
F4.3.9	Alarm annunciators	129
F4.3.10	Automatic mains-failure control system	129
F4.3.11	Automatic start-up and shut-down	129
F4.3.12	Simulated mains failure test facility	130
F4.3.13	Engine lock-out	130
F4.3.14	Emergency stop	130
F4.3.15	Auxiliary contacts	130
F4.3.16	External emergency stop	131
F4.3.17	Fire-detection system	131
<b>F5.0</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL SWITCHGEAR &amp; SWITCHBOARDS</b>	<b>131</b>
F5.1	Alternating-current switchboards and controlgear construction	131
F5.1.1	Construction	131
F5.1.2	Arrangement	132
F5.1.3	Access	132
F5.1.4	Safety	133
F5.1.5	Earthing	133
F5.1.6	Cable boxes, gland plates and terminations	134
F5.1.7	Finish	135
F5.2	Local control panels	135
F5.3	Marshalling panels and boxes	136
F5.4	Switchboard and control-board busbars and busbar connections	137
F5.5	Switchboard and control board wiring	137
F5.6	High-voltage switchgear circuit and busbar earthing	138
<b>F6.0</b>	<b>ELECTRICAL SWITCHBOARD COMPONENTS</b>	<b>139</b>
F6.1	Switchboard cubicle and enclosure components	139
F6.2	Indicating instruments and meters	139
F6.3	Indicator lights	140
F6.4	Labels	140
F6.5	Push-buttons	141
F6.6	Terminal blocks	141
F6.7	Control and selector switches	141

F6.8	Anti-condensation heaters	142
F6.9	Voltage transformers	142
F6.10	Current transformers	143
F6.11	Electrical signal transducers	143
F6.12	Control transformers	144
F6.13	Protection relays	145
F6.14	Low-voltage switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units	145
F6.15	Fuses and links — general low-voltage application	146
F6.16	Earthing and neutral links	146
F6.17	Miniature circuit breakers	146
F6.18	Residual current-operated circuit breakers	147
F6.19	High-voltage circuit breakers	147
F6.20	Low-voltage circuit breakers	148
F6.20.1	General requirements	148
F6.20.2	Open-construction circuit breakers	149
F6.20.3	Moulded-case circuit breakers	149
F6.21	Low-voltage ac motor starters	150
F6.22	Motor starters — high-voltage	151
F6.23	Variable-speed drive controllers and soft starter	152
F6.23.1	Supply system	152
F6.23.2	General design and construction of equipment	153
F6.23.3	Equipment and features	154
F6.23.4	Protection	155
F6.23.5	Power factor correction/harmonic filters	155
F6.23.6	Radio frequency interference	155
F6.23.7	Interlocks	156
F6.23.8	Harmonics and waveform notching on mains supply system	156
F6.23.9	Noise	157
F6.24	Switchboard ancillary equipment	157
<b>F7.0</b>	<b>EARTHING AND LIGHTNING PROTECTION</b>	<b>157</b>
F7.1	Earthing	157
F7.1.1	Design	157
F7.1.2	Earth electrodes	157
F7.1.3	Conductors	158
F7.1.4	Earthing terminal	159
F7.1.5	Installation	159
F7.1.6	Earthing of extraneous metalwork	159
F7.1.7	Instrumentation earthing system	160

F7.2	Neutral earthing resistors	160
F7.3	Lightning protection	161
F7.3.1	Design	161
F7.3.2	Materials	161
F7.3.3	Dimensions of component parts	161
F7.3.4	Fittings	162
F7.3.5	Metallic building fabric	162
F7.3.6	Bonds and clamps	162
F7.3.7	Conductor fixings	162
F7.3.8	Joints	162
F7.3.9	Test joints	163
F7.3.10	Earth electrodes	163
F7.3.11	Bonding to other services	163
<b>F8.0</b>	<b>CABLING INSTALLATIONS</b>	<b>164</b>
F8.1	Cabling — general requirements	164
F8.2	Cables	165
F8.2.1	Cable conductors	165
F8.2.2	Power cables	165
F8.2.3	Control cables	165
F8.2.4	Instrumentation cables	165
F8.2.5	Telephone cables	165
F8.2.6	Cables for conduit and trunking wiring systems	166
F8.2.7	Mineral insulated cables	166
F8.2.8	Use of proprietary cable types	166
F8.3	Cable glands, terminations and joints	166
F8.3.1	Cable glands	166
F8.3.2	Cable termination, joints, sleeves and tape - general	167
F8.3.3	Terminations	167
F8.3.4	Joints	168
F8.3.5	Sleeves	168
F8.3.6	Tape	168
F8.4	Cable installation	168
F8.4.1	Cable installation - general	168
F8.4.2	Arrangement of single-core cables in three-phase systems	169
F8.4.3	Cable spacing	169
F8.4.4	Cable and core identification	169
F8.4.5	Installation in buildings	170
F8.5	Cable systems	171

F8.5.1	Conduit	171
F8.5.2	Trunking	171
F8.5.3	Tray	172
F8.5.4	Ladder	172
F8.5.5	Installation directly in the ground	173
F8.5.6	Installation in ducts	173
F8.5.7	Excavation of cable trenches	173
F8.5.8	Cable ducts	174
F8.5.9	Installation of cable ducts	174
F8.5.10	Cable-protection tiles and warning tapes	174
F8.5.11	Marking of buried cables and joints	175
F8.5.12	Sealing of cable entries into buildings	175
F8.5.13	Obstructions	175
<b>F9.0</b>	<b>BUILDING SERVICES</b>	<b>175</b>
F9.1	Building and external services — power distribution	175
F9.1.1	Design	175
F9.1.2	Distribution boards	175
F9.1.3	Bulk switching contactors	177
F9.1.4	Low and extra low voltage supply transformers	177
F9.1.5	Electrical earth proving and monitoring units	177
F9.1.6	Solar time switches	177
F9.1.7	Building services wiring	177
F9.2	Building services — lighting	178
F9.2.1	General requirements	178
F9.2.2	General-purpose luminaires	178
F9.2.3	Emergency lighting luminaires	179
F9.2.4	Luminaires For hazardous areas	179
F9.2.5	Lamps	179
F9.2.6	Ceiling roses	180
F9.2.7	Pendants and chain suspensions	180
F9.2.8	Supports and fixings	180
F9.2.9	Wiring connections	181
F9.3	Building and external services — roadway lighting	181
F9.3.1	Columns	181
F9.3.2	Lanterns	182
F9.4	Building services — sockets and switches	182
F9.4.1	Socket-outlets and couplers	182
F9.4.2	Switches	182

F9.5	Switchgear battery units	183
F9.5.1	General requirements	183
F9.5.2	Battery	183
F9.5.3	Chargers	184
F9.5.4	Distribution facilities	184
F9.5.5	Battery earth fault monitoring	184
F9.5.6	Calculations	184
F9.6	Uninterruptible power systems	184
F9.6.1	General	184
F9.6.2	Isolation and fault protection	185
F9.6.3	Operating requirements	185
F9.6.4	Battery support time	185
F9.6.5	Output waveform	185
F9.6.6	Steady state regulation	185
F9.6.7	Transient response	185
F9.6.8	Frequency variation	185
F9.6.9	Rectifier and battery charger	186
F9.6.10	Battery	186
F9.6.11	Inverter	186
F9.6.12	Static bypass	187
F9.6.13	Manual bypass	187
F9.6.14	Indications	187
F9.6.15	Indicating instruments	187
F9.6.16	Alarms	187
F9.6.17	Diagnostic indicators	188
F9.7	Solar power systems	188
F9.8	Telephone System	189
F9.8.1	General	189
F9.8.2	Telephone Distribution Components	189
F9.8.3	Electronic Private Automatic Branch Exchange system (EPABX)	190
F9.8.4	System Performance	190
F9.8.5	System Peripheral Equipment	192
F9.8.6	Main Distribution Frame (MDF)	192
F9.8.7	Telephone Extension Sets	192
F9.9	Local Area Network (LAN) Cabling System	193
F9.9.1	General	193
F9.9.2	Cabling system	193
F9.9.3	FTP Cable	194



F9.9.4	Rack	195
F9.9.5	Labelling requirement	195

ITEM NO	CONTENTS LIST	Page. No
	<b>PART G – INSTRUMENTATION STANDARD SPECIFICATION</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>G1.0</b>	<b>INSTRUMENTATION — GENERAL</b>	<b>197</b>
G1.1	Scope	197
G1.2	Reference standards	197
G1.3	Statement of compliance	200
G1.4	Submissions by Contractor	200
G1.4.1	General	200
G1.4.2	Functional design specification	200
G1.4.3	Drawings and schedules	201
G1.4.4	Data and calculations	202
G1.4.5	Certificates	202
G1.4.6	Operation and maintenance instructions	202
G1.5	Basic features	202
G1.6	Design requirements for instrumentation systems	203
<b>G2.0</b>	<b>PANEL DETAILS</b>	<b>203</b>
G2.1	Enclosures and mounting boards	203
G2.2	Panel design and construction	204
G2.3	Panels — major	205
G2.4	Panels — minor	206
G2.5	Panels — composite	207
G2.6	Panels — glass reinforced plastic (GRP)	207
G2.7	Panel protection	208
G2.8	Panel isolation	209
G2.9	Panel terminal blocks	209
G2.10	Panel internal wiring	211
G2.11	Panel wiring identification and termination	212
G2.12	Panel earthing	212
G2.13	Panel heating	213
G2.14	Panel lighting	213
G2.15	Panel ventilation	213
G2.16	Panel piping and tubing	213

G2.17	Panel labels	214
G2.18	Panel finish	215
<b>G3.0</b>	<b>INSTRUMENTATION EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>215</b>
G3.1	Components, equipment and system design	215
G3.2	Instruments and ancillaries — general	216
<b>G4.0</b>	<b>FLOW-MEASURING EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>217</b>
G4.1	Differential-pressure flowmeters	217
G4.2	Electromagnetic flowmeters	218
G4.2.1	Construction	218
G4.2.2	Performance	220
G4.2.3	Testing	220
G4.3	Variable-area flowmeters	220
G4.4	Helix-type flowmeters	221
<b>G5.0</b>	<b>LEVEL-MEASURING EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>222</b>
G5.1	Float-operated level indicators	222
G5.2	Float operated level transmitters	222
G5.3	Ultrasonic level measuring system	222
G5.4	Conductivity type level detection system	223
G5.5	Pressure transducer type level and depth measuring systems	223
G5.6	Hydro-static level transmitters	224
G5.7	Sight glass level indicators	225
G5.8	Buoyancy level switches	225
<b>G6.0</b>	<b>PRESSURE-MEASURING EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>225</b>
G6.1	Pressure gauges and transmitters	225
G6.2	Pressure switches	226
<b>G7.0</b>	<b>CHEMICAL-MEASURING EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>226</b>
G7.1	Temperature meters	226
G7.2	Platinum resistance thermometers	226
G7.3	Thermocouples	227
G7.4	Temperature switches	227
G7.5	Analysis systems	227
G7.6	Residual chlorine meters	228
G7.7	pH meters	229
G7.8	Conductivity meters	230
G7.9	Turbidity meters	230

G7.10	Aluminium, iron and manganese monitors	231
G7.11	Chlorine leak detectors	231
<b>G8.0</b>	<b>RECORDING EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>232</b>
G8.1	Chart recorders	232
G8.2	Electrical indicators and integrators	233
<b>G9.0</b>	<b>ALARMS AND PANEL EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>233</b>
G9.1	Alarm systems	233
G9.2	Alarm annunciators	234
G9.3	Push-buttons and indicator lights	234
G9.4	Analogue signal transmission	235
G9.5	Analogue process controllers	235
G9.6	Programmable logic controllers	236
G9.6.1	General	236
G9.6.2	Memory	236
G9.6.3	Diagnostics	236
G9.6.4	Communications	237
G9.6.5	Input/output	237
G9.6.6	Operator interface	237
G9.6.7	Failure	238
G9.7	Signal-conditioning devices	238
<b>G10.0</b>	<b>MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT</b>	<b>238</b>
G10.1	Vibration monitoring	238
G10.2	Hygrometers	239
G11.0	INSTALLATION OF INSTRUMENTATION	239
G11.1	Installation of instruments and sensing devices	239
G11.2	Instrument air supply	240
G11.3	Pneumatic actuators, positioners and converters	242
G11.4	Plant instrument piping	242

**PART C      –      PLANT MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP**

## **PART C – PLANT MATERIALS & WORKMANSHIP**

### **C1.0 MECHANICAL & ELECTRICAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

#### **C1.1 Introduction**

This part of the Specification sets out the minimum standards of materials, workmanship and design to be used by the Contractor and reference to any specific material or equipment does not necessarily imply that such material or equipment is included in the Works.

All component parts of the Works shall, unless otherwise specified, comply with the provisions of this Chapter or be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

#### **C1.2 Standard specifications**

Except where otherwise specified all materials and workmanship shall comply with the current national standards of the country of manufacture provided that these standards are not less stringent than the equivalent specified British Standards or Codes of Practice or that they comply with the requirements of the International Standards Organisation (ISO) or the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) as appropriate.

The Contractor may be asked to make copies of relevant standards available to the Engineer or the Engineer's Representative, together with, if necessary, English translations. He shall provide these as requested for prior assessment and for use during inspection and testing.

Reference is made in this section to the Standards listed below.

ISO 10816-1:1995	Mechanical vibration. Evaluation of machine vibration by measurements on non-rotating parts. General guidelines.
BS EN 352-1:2002	Hearing protectors. Safety requirements and testing. Ear-muffs.
BS EN 681-1:1996	Elastomeric seals. Material requirements for pipe joint seals used in water and drainage applications. Vulcanized rubber.
BS EN 681-2:2000	Elastomeric seals. Material requirements for pipe joint seals used in water and drainage applications. Thermoplastic elastomers.
BS EN 729-1:1995	Quality requirements for welding. Fusion welding of metallic materials. Guidelines for selection and use.
BS EN 971-1:1996	Paints and varnishes. Terms and definitions for coating materials. General terms.

BS EN 1092-1:2002	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, PN designated. Steel flanges.
BS EN 1515-1:2000	Flanges and their joints. Bolting. Selection of bolting.
BS EN 1561:1997	Founding. Grey cast irons.
BS EN 1563:1997	Founding. Spheroidal graphite cast iron.
BS EN 1982:1999	Copper and copper alloys. Ingots and castings.
BS EN 10029:1991	Specification for tolerances on dimensions, shape and mass for hot rolled steel plates 3 mm thick or above.
BS EN 10051:1992	Specification for continuously hot-rolled uncoated plate, sheet and strip of non-alloy and alloy steels. Tolerances on dimensions and shape.
BS EN 10297-1:2003	Seamless circular steel tubes for mechanical and general engineering purposes. Technical delivery conditions. Non-alloy and alloy steel tubes.
BS EN 12540:2000	Corrosion protection of metals. Electro deposited coatings of nickel, nickel plus chromium, copper plus nickel and copper plus nickel plus chromium.
BS 1486	Lubricating nipples.
BS 1710:1984	Specification for identification of pipelines and services.
BS 3100:1991	Specification for steel castings for general engineering purposes.
BS 3643-1&2:1981	ISO metric screw threads.
BS 3692:2001	ISO metric precision hexagon bolts, screws and nuts. Specification.
BS 4190:2001	ISO metric black hexagon bolts, screws and nuts. Specification.
BS 4395-1&2:1969	Specification for high strength friction grip bolts and associated nuts and washers for structural engineering.
BS 4800:1989	Schedule of paint colours for building purposes.
BS 4871-3:1985	Specification for approval testing of welders working to approved welding procedures. Arc welding of tube to tube-plate joints in metallic materials.
BS 4872-1:1982	Specification for approval testing of welders when welding procedure approval is not required. Fusion welding of steel.
BS 4872-2:1976	Specification for approval testing of welders when welding procedure approval is not required. TIG or MIG welding of aluminium and its alloys.
BS 4921:1988	Specification for sherardized coatings on iron or steel.
BS 4933:1973	Specification for ISO metric black cup and countersunk head bolts and screws with hexagon nuts.
BS 5252:1976	Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes.
BS 5493:1977	Code of practice for protective coating of iron and steel structures against corrosion.
BS 5499-5:2002	Graphical symbols and signs. Safety signs, including fire safety signs. Signs with specific safety meanings.
BS 7079	Preparation of steel substrates before application of paints and related products. All parts thereof.
BS 7668:1994	Specification for weldable structural steels. Hot finished structural hollow sections in weather resistant steels.

### **C1.3 Plant design and life**

The Works as a whole shall be new, of sound workmanship and robustly designed for a long, reliable operating life and shall be capable of continuous operation for prolonged periods in the climatic and working conditions prevailing at the Site, with the minimum of maintenance.

The design shall take account of temperature changes, the stability of paint finish for high temperatures, the rating of engines, electrical machinery, thermal-overload services, cooling systems and the choice of lubricants for possible high and prolonged operating temperatures. The Contractor shall be called upon to demonstrate this for any component part, either by service records or evidence of similar equipment already installed elsewhere or relevant type tests.

The Plant shall be designed to provide protection against damage by the entry of vermin and dust, and to minimise fire risk and consequent fire damage. It shall be protected against damage due to dampness and condensation. Plant shall operate without undue vibration, and parts shall be designed to withstand the maximum stresses under the most severe conditions of service. Materials shall have a high resistance to change in their properties due to the passage of time or any cause which may have a detrimental effect upon the performance or life of the Works.

All manually-controlled Plant located outside a building shall be tamperproof. This is in addition to any requirements of the Specification for securing Plant under operational conditions.

All component parts of the Plant shall be manufactured to be interchangeable with the component parts of similar Plant.

The Plant shall be designed to have a high resistance to change in its operating characteristics due to passage of time or any other which may affect the performance or life of the Works. The Contractor may be called upon to demonstrate this for any component part either by service records of similar equipment, or by the records of extensive type tests.

Materials shall be selected taking into consideration their location and duty. For Plant in contact with water, the risk of electrolytic reaction between differing materials of construction and to the effects of corrosion and erosion shall be taken into account.

The plant shall be designed to provide easy access for replacement of component parts which are subject to wear, without the need to replace whole units. Except for consumable items requiring frequent replacement, no part subject to wear shall have a life from new to replacement or repair of less than five years. Where major dismantling is unavoidable to replace a part, the life shall not be less than ten years.

#### **C1.4 Substances and products**

Substances and products used in the Works which may be in contact with water which is to be supplied for drinking, washing or cooking shall not contain any matter which could impart taste, odour, colour or toxicity to the water or otherwise be objectionable on health grounds.

All substances and products so used shall meet the requirements of Regulation 25 of the Water Supply (Water Quality) Regulations 1989 or the Water Supply (Water Quality) (Scotland) Regulations 1990 or other equivalent body as applicable.

### **C1.5 Workmanship**

Workmanship and the general finish of plant installations shall be of first-class commercial quality and in accordance with the best workshop practice, and shall be performed by persons skilled in their respective trades.

Pipe work, fittings, cables, cable trays and the like shall be fitted in a neat, straight and symmetrical manner so as to present a pleasing appearance.

Indicating gauges fitted to machine assemblies or control panels shall generally be of similar style and grouped together.

External welds and flame cuts shall be finished smoothly by grinding.

Chequer plate coverings shall be fixed squarely in their frames with their patterns properly aligned. Handrailings shall be free from burrs.

### **C1.6 Welding**

Where welds may be highly stressed, the Contractor shall supply to the Engineer before welding starts detailed drawings of all weld preparations and procedures proposed. No welding shall be carried out before the Engineer has approved the procedures. No alteration shall be made to any previously-approved procedures without prior approval of the Engineer. Welders shall be qualified in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate section of BS 4871-3:1985, BS 4872-1:1982 and BS 4872-2:1976.

### **C1.7 Castings**

The structure of castings shall be homogeneous and free from non-metallic inclusions and other defects. Surfaces of castings which are not machined shall be carefully fettled to remove all foundry irregularities.

Minor defects which do not exceed 10mm in depth or 10% of the total metal thickness (whichever is less) and which will not ultimately affect the strength and serviceability of the casting may be repaired by approved welding techniques. The Engineer shall be notified of larger defects and no repair welding of such defects shall be done without his prior approval.

If the removal of metal for repair should reduce the stress-resisting cross-section of the casting by more than 25%, or to such an extent that the computed stress in the remaining metal exceeds the allowable stress by more than 25%, then the casting will be rejected.

Castings repaired by welding for major defects shall be stress-relieved after such welding, or as otherwise instructed by the Engineer.

Non-destructive tests may be required for any casting containing defects whose effect cannot otherwise be established, or to determine that repair welds have been properly made.

Unless otherwise specified, castings shall be produced to the following standards or equal:

- |                |                 |             |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| • grey-iron    | BS EN 1561:1997 | Grade 220   |
| • carbon steel | BS 3100:1991    | Steel alloy |



- |                         |                 |                        |
|-------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| • stainless steel       | BS 3100:1991    | Steel 316C16           |
| • copper & copper alloy | BS EN 1982:1999 | Group A grade LG2      |
|                         |                 | Group B grade CT1, AB2 |
|                         |                 | Group C grade G1       |

### **C1.8 Forgings**

Major stress-bearing forgings shall be made to a standard specification which shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval before work begins. They shall be subject to internal examination and non-destructive tests for the detection of flaws and shall be heat-treated for the relief of residual stress. The name of the maker and particulars of the heat treatment proposed for each major forging shall be submitted to the Engineer.

### **C1.9 Non-metallic materials**

The use of organic materials shall be avoided as far as possible but where these have to be used they shall be treated to make them fire resistant and non-flame propagating.

Fabrics, cork, paper and similar materials which are not subsequently to be protected by impregnation, shall be treated with a fungicide. Sleaving and fabrics treated with linseed oil varnish are not acceptable.

The use of wood shall be avoided as far as possible. If used, woodwork shall be thoroughly seasoned teak or similar hardwood which is resistant to fungal decay and other blemishes. All woodwork shall be treated to protect it against damage by any cause. All joints in woodwork shall be dovetailed or tongued and pinned. Metal fittings on wood shall be non-ferrous. Adhesives shall be impervious to moisture and fungus growth. Only synthetic resin cement shall be used for joining wood.

### **C1.10 Nuts, bolts, studs and washers**

Nuts and bolts for pressure fittings shall be of high-quality steel, machined on the shank and under the head and nut. Bolts shall be dimensioned, so that, only one to three threads shall show through the nut when in the fully-tightened condition.

Fitted bolts shall be a light driving fit in the reamed holes they occupy. These shall have the screwed portion of a diameter that will not be damaged in driving and shall be marked in a conspicuous position to ensure correct assembly at site.

Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration fittings shall be provided where necessary to ensure that no bending stress is caused in the bolt.

When there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt does not exceed half the yield stress of the material.

All bolts, nuts and screws which are subject to frequent adjustment or removal in the course of maintenance and repair shall be made of nickel-bearing stainless steel or brass.

Bolts, nuts, screws and washers which may be submerged in a corrosive liquid shall be stainless steel.

The Contractor shall supply all holding-down, alignment and levelling bolts complete with

anchorages, nuts, washers and packings required to attach the Plant to its foundation. The Contractor shall also supply all bedplates, frames and other structural parts necessary to spread the loads transmitted by the Plant to concrete foundations without exceeding the design stresses.

Isometric black hexagonal bolts, nuts and screws shall comply with BS 4190:2001 strength grade 4.6.

Isometric precision hexagonal bolts, nuts and screws shall comply with BS 3692:2001 strength grade 8.8.

High-strength friction-grip bolts, nuts and washers shall comply with BS 4395-1&2:1969.

Black cup and countersunk head bolts and screws with nuts shall comply with BS 4933:1973.

Stainless steel nuts, screws, washers and bolts shall be manufactured from Grade 316S31 steel complying with BS 10250-4:2000 or BS 1515-1:2000.

Bolting for pipes and fittings shall comply with the relevant provisions of BS EN 1515-1:2000 except that spheroidal graphite iron bolts for use with ductile iron pipes and fittings shall be manufactured from metal complying with the provisions of BS EN 1563:1997 for grade 500/7.

#### **C1.11 Threads**

All threads shall be of preferred metric sizes with the standard coarse form of medium fit to BS 3643-1&2:1982 except for special applications, for which the metric fine thread or other thread forms may be utilised, subject to the approval of the Engineer.

#### **C1.12 Guards for moving parts**

All moving parts shall be protected by safety guards.

Guards shall be rigid, securely fixed and designed to allow normal operation, running maintenance and routine inspection on equipment without the need to remove the guard. Where this is impractical, guards shall be designed for easy fixing, dismantling and re-assembly.

#### **C1.13 Safeguarding of plant**

The Contractor shall ensure that the whole of the Works as installed is safe for use by the operating and maintenance staff, and by any other persons having access thereto. Guards, electrical safety devices, thermal insulation, noise-suppression devices, written notices, safety colours and the like shall be provided where necessary during erection and permanently.

Plant layout shall provide easy and safe access to all operating devices, free from hazardous obstructions.

Nothing in this Specification shall remove the Contractor's obligation from drawing the attention of the Engineer to any feature of the Works which is not consistent with safety, or prevent him making proposals for incorporating equipment or designs which would increase the safety of the Plant.

#### **C1.14 Rating plates, name plates and labels**

The Contractor shall ensure that each main and auxiliary item of Plant and equipment shall have permanently attached to it in a conspicuous position a nameplate and rating plate. Upon these shall be engraved the manufacturer's name, type and serial number of plant, details of the loading and duty at which the item of Plant has been designed to operate, and such diagrams as are deemed necessary. All indicating and operating devices shall have securely attached to them or marked upon them designations of their function and proper use. Provision shall be made to incorporate descriptive numbering codes as indicated on the layout drawings.

All valves shall have an identification plate bearing the valve number and a short description of valve function.

On major items of plant and valves, details of proposed plates, labels and inscriptions shall be provided by the Contractor for approval by the Engineer.

Nameplates, rating plates and labels shall be of a non-flame-propagating material, either non-hygroscopic or transparent plastic, with engraved lettering of a contrasting colour. Fixing shall be by means of non-corrodible screws.

Warning labels shall be provided where necessary to warn of dangerous circumstances or substances. Inscriptions or graphic symbols shall be black on a yellow background and to internationally recognised standards.

Instruction labels shall be provided where safety procedures (such as the wearing of protective clothing) are essential to protect personnel from hazardous or potentially-hazardous conditions. These labels shall have inscriptions or graphic symbols in white on a blue background.

#### **C1.15 Lubrication**

##### **(a) General:**

Plant shall be lubricated, as necessary to ensure smooth operation, heat removal and freedom from undue wear. Lubricated items shall be designed so that they do not require more than weekly lubrication, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

All grease nipples, oil cups and dip sticks shall be readily accessible, being piped where necessary to a convenient position.

The Contractor shall supply the first fill of oil and grease for Plant and maintenance equipment. The Contractor shall also provide the Employer with enough consumables for all equipment for two months of normal operation from the date of the Taking-Over Certificate.

A complete schedule of recommended oils and other lubricants shall be provided by the Contractor as part of the operating and maintenance manuals. The number of different types of lubricants shall be kept to a minimum. For grease-lubricated ball and roller bearings, a lithium-based grease is preferred.

**(b) Oil lubrication:**

Gear boxes and oil baths shall be provided with adequately filling and draining plugs and oil level indication.

Roller chain drives shall have oil-bath lubrication.

Drain points shall be positioned so that an adequately sized container can be placed beneath them. Where a large quantity of oil is involved or drainage to a container difficult, a drain valve and plug shall be provided at the point of discharge.

Bearings equipped with forced-feed oil lubrication shall be automatically charged prior to machinery starting up, and pressure monitored during operation with automatic shutdown of machinery and alarm on low oil pressure.

All points where oil leakage may occur shall be suitably trapped to prevent oil contamination of water. Oil filling and drain points shall be arranged to avoid the risk of contamination of water by accidental spillage.

Access, without the use of portable ladders, to lubrication systems shall permit maintenance, draining and re-filling, without contamination of the charged lubricant.

The design of breathers shall take into account the conditions at the vent point, and include measures to prevent contamination of the lubricant.

**(c) Grease lubrication:**

Grease application shall be by steel lubrication nipples manufactured in accordance with BS 1486.

Anti-friction bearings requiring infrequent charging shall be fitted with hydraulic type nipples.

Plain bearings requiring frequent charging shall be fitted with button-head pattern nipples.

A separate nipple shall be provided to serve each lubrication point. Where a number of nipples supply remote lubricating points they shall be grouped together on a conveniently placed battery plate, with spacing in accordance with the recommendations of BS 1486-1:1959, Tables 9 and 10.

The Contractor shall provide a grease gun for each size and type of nipple installed. Where different types of grease are involved, separate grease guns shall be provided for each type. They shall be suitably labelled and, if possible, be of different styles to prevent incorrect greasing.

### **C1.16 Gaskets and joint rings**

Joint rings shall be manufactured to conform to BS EN 681-1:1996 and BS EN 681-2:2000. They shall be of chloroprene rubber or other approved synthetic material suitable for temperatures up to 80°C or greater, to suit the application.

Joints shall be made in accordance with manufacturer's instructions or as specified herein.

Each rubber ring or gasket shall be stored in the dark, free from the deleterious effects of heat or cold, and kept flat so as to prevent any part of the rubber being in tension.

Only lubricants recommended by the manufacturer shall be used for rubber rings and these lubricants shall not contain any constituent soluble in the fluid conveyed. They shall be suitable for the climatic conditions at the Site and shall contain an approved bactericide.

Graphite grease or similar shall be applied to the threads of bolts before joints are made.

### **C1.17 Electroplating, galvanising and sherardizing**

Parts to be galvanised, other than nuts, bolts and fasteners, shall be hot-dip galvanised to BS EN 729-1:1995, and associated parts thereof, to give a minimum average coating of 610g/m<sup>2</sup> of area covered and a zinc thickness of not less than 85 microns.

Where specified, nuts, bolts and fasteners to be galvanised shall be hot-dip galvanised to BS EN 729-1:1995 to give a minimum average coating of 305g/m<sup>2</sup> and a zinc thickness of not less than 43 microns. Where hot-dip galvanising is not practicable, nuts, bolts and fasteners shall be sherardized. Sherardizing shall be in accordance with BS 4921:1988, the thickness of zinc coating shall be not less than 30 microns.

Where chromium plating is used, it shall comply with the requirements of BS EN 12540:2000 including the following provisions:

- no blistering of any surfaces will be accepted;
- where the base metal is steel, plating shall be applied in accordance with Table 2;
- for all base metals, the service condition number 2 shall be used.

### **C1.18 Noise**

Except as provided for below, the noise emitted by any single item of Plant shall not exceed a sound pressure level of 85dB(A) when measured at a distance of 1m from the reference surface of that item in any direction and under the environmental conditions appropriate to the test requirements of ISO 3746 'Acoustic determination of sound power levels of noise services - survey methods' or the equivalent ANSI S12.36 - 1990 (R1997).

The Contractor shall be responsible for all noise tests on site. Sound pressure levels shall be measured in dB(A) using a calibrated sound meter with its response speed set to 'slow'.

For major items of Plant, the Contractor shall provide certificates from the manufacturer covering noise-level tests on the items or type test certificates for similar items of Plant.

If any item of Plant does not comply with the above requirement, the Contractor shall reduce the sound pressure level by providing improved or additional silencers or fitting sound-insulating materials until the requirement is met.

Plant such as compressors, diesel generators, gas turbines, blowers and the like, where reduction in noise to below 85dB(A) at 1m is impractical, will be installed in separate rooms constructed in or containing sound-absorbing material, generally as shown in the drawings. The noise level shall not exceed 75dB(A) when measured 1m from the outside of the room or structure. The Contractor shall provide hazard warning notices at the entrance to the room indicating that ear defenders must be worn. The Contractor shall provide a minimum of three pairs of ear defenders to BS EN 352-1:2002 which shall be stored in a dust-proof locker.

Diesel-engine exhausts shall incorporate acoustic splitter-type louvres to reduce noise level to below 80dB(A) at 1m distance.

The background noise level at any point along the boundary of the site, arising from operation of plant shall not exceed 65dB(A).

No item shall have a sound level exceeding 85dB(A) at 1m distance unless that item and its actual sound pressure level is included in the Schedules of leading particulars, which form part of the Contract and is approved.

#### **C1.19 Vibration**

All rotating elements shall be dynamically balanced so that the level of vibration at any point on any Plant item when operating at Site, either singly or with other Plant, and at any speed throughout the operating range, shall be within the limits of Class IV, grade B, as defined in ISO 10816-1:1995.

Pipe work, valves and other connected equipment, or forming part of the operating system, shall be provided with adequate supports, brackets and fixtures, as necessary, to restrict any induced vibration to a minimum, under any operating condition.

Vibration measurements shall be taken on site by the Contractor at various points on each complete machine as defined above.

Measurements shall also be taken on connecting plant. If any item is found to be vibrating beyond the level considered by the Engineer to be a reasonable minimum, the Contractor shall reduce the vibrations to the required level.

**C1.20 Access steel work**

The Contractor shall provide adequate access to all Plant items to which access is necessary for routine maintenance and operation.

The principal ladders, platforms, covers and handrails to be supplied and fixed under this Contract are shown in the drawings.

Any small areas of chequer plating or other covering needed to cover gaps between items of Plant and the surrounding structure, and any access ladders, platforms and handrails that must be attached to items of Plant to facilitate operation, inspection or maintenance, shall be supplied and erected by the Contractor.

Handrails shall consist of double ball forged steel standards with tubular rails, hot-dip galvanised in accordance with BS EN 729-1:1995.

Chequer plating shall be of 'Durbar' or other non-lip pattern, not less than 4.5mm thick (exclusive of pattern) and hot-dip galvanised after fabrication in accordance with BS EN 729-1:1995.

Diamond type pattern chequer plate shall not be used. Open-type or solid-type chequer plate flooring shall be used as appropriate for the location, taking into account ease of cleaning, precautions against slipping and areas below walkways.

**C1.21 Hand railing**

Hand railing shall be double rail 1100mm high and 900mm high on stairs measured vertically from the nose of the tread.

Standards shall be 38mm diameter solid forged steel to BS 7668:1994 and BS EN 10029:1991 Grade 43A with 60mm diameter solid forged steel balls at handrail locating points drilled to give 1.5mm clearance to handrails. Each ball shall incorporate a concealed grub-screw with Allen-type head to secure the rail. Standards shall have a minimum base width of 65mm, drilled for M16 fixing bolts and be set at maximum 1800mm centres.

Handrails shall be 33.7mm OD × 3.2mm thick tubular steel to BS EN 10297-1:2003. Joints shall be arranged to coincide with the spacing of standards where possible, otherwise they shall have butt joints with a tubular steel ferrule, plug welded or fixed with a 5mm diameter countersunk head pin.

Removable sections of handrail shall have half-lap joints secured with a countersunk head pin.

Chains across openings shall be 10mm × 3 links per 100mm galvanised mild steel. The hooks and retaining eyes shall be securely fixed to the balls of the standards.

All components for handrailing shall be hot-dip galvanised after manufacture in accordance with BS 729-1:1995.

## **C1.22 Machinery, lifting and dismantling**

Machinery bedplate design, packing and fixing shall minimise distortion and vibration. Aligned machinery shall be mounted on either bed or sole plates, permitting removal and reinstatement without a requirement to re-grout. Bedplates shall incorporate fine adjustment of the vertical and horizontal alignment between driver and driven Plant.

All machinery shall be fitted with lifting facilities. Large structures shall be provided with jacking points.

For Plant subject to frequent dismantling, tapped holes or other provision shall be made in all main castings, for the insertion of jacking screws or the fixing of drawing gear. Bolts or studs shall be used in preference to set screws.

## **C1.23 Seals**

### **(a) General**

The Contractor shall select a seal, compatible with his Plant and best suited for the worst conditions likely to be met when the Plant is in operation.

All seal materials shall be compatible with the fluid (including gases) being handled. For potable water, seal materials shall be subject to approval.

### **(b) Soft-packed glands**

Shafts shall be provided with renewable gland sleeves. Glands subject to abrasive liquids or negative pressures shall include lantern rings and a clean water continuous flushing system.

Gland adjustment nuts shall be readily accessible.

Gland drain pipework, shall be provided, discharging to the nearest sump or drainage channel.

### **(c) Mechanical seals**

Mechanical seals which are subject to abrasive or corrosive fluids (including gases) or negative pressures shall be provided with a clean water gland flushing system. A back-to-back sealing arrangement with a flushing/cooling system will be accepted as satisfying the requirements of this clause.

## **C1.24 Bearings**

The Contractor shall select the most appropriate type of bearing for the Plant being supplied.

Single journal plain bearings shall be phosphor bronze or synthetic lubrication impregnated bushes with carbon or stainless steel journals respectively. Synthetic bearings shall be used



only where bearing condition can be inspected readily.

Plain-type bearings shall be self-lubricating either by grease, forced oil or impregnation.

Ball and roller type bearings shall be adequately lubricated by oil or grease and sealed to prevent leakage of lubricant along the shaft. The dismantling of bearings shall be simple and free from risk of damage.

Bearings fitted to gearboxes shall have a minimum design life of 100 000 hours at maximum loading.

#### **C1.25 Gearboxes**

Gearboxes shall have a life of 100 000 hours, be selected in accordance with American Gearbox Manufacturers' Association recommendation for horsepower and service factor application. They shall employ a standard reduction ratio.

Gearboxes which have to be angle-mounted shall have a rating, choice of bearings, seals and lubrication system designed for such mounting.

Dependence on splash lubrication alone is not acceptable but it may be used in conjunction with a forced-feed method to reach all bearings and gears.

#### **C1.26 Safety signs**

All signs providing health and safety information or instructions shall comply with BS 5499-5:2002 and equivalent local standards.

Signs shall be of durable quality and shall comprise a substrate of 22 gauge aluminium, pre-drilled for fixing and with radiused corners free of burrs or sharp edges. Symbols and lettering shall be screen printed.

#### **C1.27 Corrosion and erosion**

Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall make proper provision for the prevention of corrosion and erosion in any part of the Plant. Provision shall include the use of suitable materials, choice of operating speeds, design of components and type of protective coatings and finishes.

#### **C1.28 Precautions against damp**

Special precautions shall be taken to prevent corrosion due to humidity, rainfall and moisture.

All wall-mounted equipment shall be fitted with spacers to provide a minimum gap of 5mm. All holes in equipment shall be effectively sealed against the ingress of water. All items exposed to the weather or water shall be free of water traps; where necessary, drain holes shall be provided to prevent the accumulation of water.

All fixings, fastenings and spacers which may be submerged in a corrosive liquid shall be galvanised or sherardized, unless otherwise specified.

All electrical equipment which is not sealed against free movement of air shall be protected from condensation with anti-condensation heaters. In general, heaters shall be thermostatically-controlled and switched off when enough heat is generated by operation of the Plant.

## **C2.0 PAINTING AND PROTECTION**

### **C2.1 Scope**

Protective coatings shall comply with BS 5493:1977 'Code of practice for the protective coating of iron and steel against corrosion' except as otherwise specified. For coatings designed to BS 5493:1977 exterior conditions shall be assumed to be 'polluted inland' conditions and the interiors of buildings shall be assumed to be 'frequently damp or wet' except for control rooms. The thickness of coatings stated in this section of the specification is the minimum allowable thickness as defined in Clause 19 of BS 5493:1977. Where the paints that are available do not provide dry-film thickness as specified, additional coatings shall be applied. Protective coatings for surfaces of tanks and other plant in contact with chemicals or otherwise in conditions not foreseen in this section of the specification or in BS 5493:1977 shall be suitable for those conditions. They shall be the subject of design submissions supported by evidence proving satisfactory experience of the proposals elsewhere.

Where dissimilar metals are in contact, the Contractor shall provide insulation to prevent electrochemical corrosion.

### **C2.2 General**

The protective coating system shall have a minimum 10-year life to first maintenance. A five-year minimum performance warranty shall be given in respect of the paint as applied.

All coatings applied to any part of the plant in contact with water to be used for drinking, washing or cooking shall be non-toxic, non-carcinogenic, shall not impart taste, odour, colour or turbidity to the water or foster microbial growth and shall be approved in the same manner as substances and products in clause C1.4.

No manufacturer's name-plate identification, vented filler plugs in gearboxes or grease nipples shall be painted over.

To avoid the possibility of the presence of carcinogenic poly-aromatic hydrocarbons all bituminous paints and coatings shall be manufactured from petroleum or asphaltic bitumen and not from coal tar bitumen.

Lead based paints shall not be used.

All machined, polished or bright surfaces shall be given suitable protection against corrosion,

damage and deterioration.

The Contractor shall ensure that, before despatch from the manufacturer's works and after completion of erection, all plant has received suitable preparation followed by the protection system listed in tables A and B attached.

The Contractor shall liaise closely with the plant manufacturer who shall provide full facilities for him to inspect and check the preparation and painting during all stages. The Contractor shall report on his inspections to the Engineer.

All paint materials shall be stored and applied strictly in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

Paint shall not be applied under adverse conditions. Air temperatures shall be above 5°C and relative humidity less than 55% or as otherwise specified by the paint manufacturer.

The Contractor shall ensure that, for the materials specified, application conditions are in accordance with the specification and manufacturer's instructions. Paint shall be applied only to surfaces that have been cleaned and prepared in accordance with these instructions.

Where local climatic conditions make the specified requirements difficult to achieve, the Contractor shall provide temporary protection during painting.

The dry paint-film thickness shall be measured by Elcometer or other approved method.

Galvanising shall comply with Clause C1.17. All manufacturing processes shall be complete prior to galvanising with all erection markings clearly legible afterwards. Surfaces shall be adequately degreased before the application of any coating, pre-treated with a brush application of etch primer or T wash.

Steel subject to hydrogen embrittlement through galvanising shall not be used.

All iron and steelwork to be painted shall be blast cleaned to all parts of BS 7079 Second Quality to achieve a surface profile with a minimum amplitude of 0.025mm and a maximum of 0.100mm.

Following blast cleaning, steel surfaces shall be zinc metal sprayed where specified.

Aluminium structures and fittings shall need not be painted.

### **C2.3 Coating systems**

Tables A and B identify the coating systems to be used and minimum coating thicknesses.

### **C2.4 Fusion-bonded epoxy powder coatings**

All fabricated steel pipe work and other Plant where specified, shall have a lining and coating, not less than 250 microns thick, of 100% solids, thermosetting fusion-bonded, dry power epoxy coating.

All grit and dust shall be removed and coating shall be started before formation of visible oxidation of the surface. The metal shall be pre-heated to a temperature recommended by the

manufacturer and the epoxy powder applied by immersion in a fluidised bed, after which excess powder shall be removed. The powder shall be allowed to flow out completely before curing.

The thickness of the coating, including any repaired areas, shall be checked with a calibrated tester. Spark testing, for pinholes, voids, contamination, cracks and damaged areas, shall use a high-voltage spark generator.

Repairs due to coating imperfections or damage shall be done using a brush-applied compatible two-pack liquid epoxy compound.

The area to be repaired shall be cleaned to remove dirt, grease, scale and damaged coating, which shall be feathered. Pinhole surface preparation is not required other than removal of detrimental contaminants which could impair the adhesion of the repair material.

The surface coating shall be applied by an approved applicator.

GRP covers and guards shall be pigmented to give the finished colour without painting.

## **C2.5 Coating system for electrical enclosures**

Enclosures shall be given protective coating at the place of manufacture and before installation of any electrical fittings.

Electrical panels, including switchboards, control panels and instrument panels, installed within buildings shall be prepared as follows:-

- (i) Thoroughly clean surfaces to remove rust, scale, dirt, loose paint and the like and degrease by the use of solvents which are compatible with the paint finish to be applied. If rust-proof steel has not been used in the construction, the surfaces shall be treated with a passivating agent such as phosphoric acid.
- (ii) Internal surfaces shall have a minimum of three coats of paint of which the first shall be an approved priming coat. The final coat shall be an opaque gloss white enamel.
- (iii) External surfaces shall have a minimum of five coats of paint of which the first shall be an approved priming coat, the second and third a suitable undercoat, all of which shall be rubbed smooth when dry before application of the next coat. The colour of undercoat paints shall be different from priming and finishing coats.
- (iv) The final coats shall be of stove enamel paint to a finish and colour as specified in Table C. The dry-film thickness shall be not less than 100 microns.

Electrical panels which are to be installed in exposed positions or in damp conditions shall receive a surface preparation containing zinc prior to application of the primer undercoat and finishing coats.

A 500 ml tin of matching touch-up paint shall be supplied with each panel.

## **C2.6 Defects**

Defects are defined in BS EN 971-1:1996 'Glossary of paint terms'.

The Contractor shall ensure that all coatings are free from defects and adequate in all respects for the purpose intended.

The painting system shall be deemed to have failed if:-

- (a) after painting, damage has been caused by handling, impact, abrasion or welding;
- (b) any portion of the paint film separates from any other or the parent metal;
- (c) after painting the total dry-film thickness is less than that specified.

Failure shall not include:-

- (a) loss of gloss;
- (b) variation of shade, not affecting the anti-corrosive properties of the system.

## **C2.7 Colour coding**

Unless otherwise specified, colour coding for plant, equipment and pipework shall be as given in tables C to H. Steel pipes shall be painted and hoses and thermoplastic pipes shall be colour banded in accordance with BS1710. When using colour bands on thermoplastic pipes the Contractor shall ensure that the adhesives used on colour bands do not contain agents which will cause deterioration of the pipes. Colour bands shall be applied on straight lengths of pipes at no more than 3m spacing. Bands shall be applied, at all junctions, both sides of valves, Plant, fittings and wall penetrations.

Finishing coats shall be applied as specified in the colour schedule in accordance with the requirements of BS 1710:1984, BS 4800:1989, BS 5252:1976 and BS 5499-5:2002.

Pipeline contents shall be identified by name and the direction of flow by arrows.

Where two or more pipes in a duct or gallery convey the same fluids, each pipe shall display a separate number, with contents named at each point of entry or outlet.

**TABLE A: REQUIRED COATING SYSTEMS AND MINIMUM COATING THICKNESSES FOR PLANT AND EQUIPMENT**

	Applied prior to delivery and erection					Applied following installation
	Substrate	Pre-treatment	First coat	Second coat	Third coat	Finishing coat
ABOVE WATER LEVEL:  Machinery & steelwork not in contact with sewage, sludge or water to be used for drinking, washing or cooking	Steel (galvanised)	Etch prime or T wash	Zinc phosphate CR alkyd primer undercoat (0.050mm)	High-build chlorinated rubber paint (0.075mm)		High-build chlorinated rubber paint (0.075mm)
	Steel zinc sprayed (0.070mm)	Etch prime				
	Steel, cast iron, ductile iron	Blast clean BS 7079 2nd quality	Zinc phosphate CR alkyd blast primer (0.050mm)	Zinc phosphate CR alkyd primer (0.050mm)	High-build chlorinated rubber (0.075mm)	
BELOW WATER LEVEL:  Machinery and steelwork in contact with water to be used for drinking, washing or cooking	Steel (galvanised)	Etch prime or T wash	Epoxy primer high-build (0.125mm)	Epoxy high-build (0.050mm)	Epoxy high-build (0.075mm)	
	Steel, cast iron, ductile iron, zinc sprayed (0.070mm)	Etch prime				
Pipework	Steel	As specified elsewhere				
Switchboard shells, frames and backplates	Steel	As specified elsewhere				

**TABLE B: REQUIRED HEAT-RESISTANT COATING SYSTEMS FOR STEELWORK**

Working temperature	A1: Surface treatment	First coat	Second coat	Third coat
50°C to 175°C	Blast clean BS 7079 second quality	Polyvinyl Butyral (0.025mm)	Aluminium heat-resistant @ 200°C (0.025mm)	Aluminium heat-resistant @ 200°C (0.025mm)
		Zinc chromate primer (0.012mm–0.015mm)		
175°C to 500°C	Blast clean BS 7079 second quality	Aluminium pigmented silicone heat-resistant (0.025mm)	Aluminium pigmented silicone heat-resistant (0.025mm)	
		NB A minimum temperature of 350°C within a short time after application is required		

**TABLE C: COLOUR CODING FOR PLANT AND EQUIPMENT**

Equipment		Colour finish		BS 4800
		Drinking water	Waste water	shade number
Above water level: Machinery and steelwork not in contact with sewage, sludge or potable water or specified as requiring identification as table D below	Pumps and machinery	Green	—	12–D–45
		—	Saxe blue	18–C–39
	Dry-well motors	Tangerine	Tangerine	06–E–51
	Guards	Flame	Flame	04–E–53
	Gearboxes	Saxe Blue	Saxe blue	18–C–39
	Compressors & blowers	Blue	Blue	24–E–51
	Lifting gantries	Gorse	Gorse	08–E–51
	Valves & pipework above FFL	Green	—	12–D–45
		—	Pale grey	00–A–05
	Pipework below FFL	Black	Black	00–E–53
Below water level: Machinery and steelwork (including pumps, penstocks, pipework and the like)		Black	Black	00–E–53
Switchboard shells		Light grey semi-gloss	Light grey semi-gloss	18–B–17

Switchboard supporting frames	Black semi-gloss	Black semi-gloss	00-E-53
Switchboard internal equipment mounting plates	White semi-gloss	White semi-gloss	00-E-55
Control and instrument panels - external	Light grey semi-gloss	Light grey semi-gloss	18-B-17
Control and instrument panels - internal	White gloss	White gloss	00-E-55
GRP covers (pigmented)	Spruce	Spruce	14-C-39

**TABLE D: IDENTIFICATION COLOURS FOR PIPES**

All pipes are to be identified in accordance with BS 1710

	<b>Basic identification colour</b>	<b>BS 4800 shade no.</b>	<b>Colour code indication</b>	<b>BS 4800 shade no.</b>
Drinking water	Green	12-D-45	Auxiliary blue	18-E-53
Steam	Silver grey	10-A-03	—	—
Mineral, vegetable and animal oils combustible liquids	Brown	06-C-39	Green	14-E-53
Diesel fuel	Brown	06-C-39	White	00-E-55
Gases in either gaseous or liquid defined condition (except air)	Yellow ochre	08-C-35	Refer to Tables E to J	
Acid and alkalis	Violet	22-C-37	Refer to Tables E to J	
Air	Blue	20-E-51	—	—
Other liquids	Black	00-E-53	Refer to Tables E to J	
Electrical services such as conduits & trunkings	Tangerine	06-E-51	—	—



**TABLE E: IDENTIFICATION COLOURS FOR PIPES - CHLORINE**

Steel pipework carrying chlorine shall be painted in the following colours to BS 381C:

Chlorine pipework : golden yellow, no. 356

uPVC pipework carrying chlorine or sulphur dioxide gas or solution shall be banded with vinyl laminated identification tape to enable individual lines to be identified throughout their length. The banding shall conform to BS 1710 to indicate the fluid conveyed and shall have flow direction arrows, lettering and codings as described below:

**(a) Lettering**

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Lettering</b>	<b>Colour</b>	<b>Height</b>
Gas	"CHLORINE" or	Black	5mm
Solution	"Cl <sub>2</sub> " or "SO <sub>2</sub> "	White	10mm
Motive Water	Not applicable	-	-
Waste Water	"DRAIN"	White	5mm
Relief Vent	"VENT"	Black	5mm

**(b) Banding**

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Coded Bands</b>
Gas	yellow ochre - danger marker - yellow ochre
Solution	violet - danger marker - violet
Motive Water	green - blue - green
Waste Water	black
Relief vent	yellow ochre - danger marker - yellow ochre

Individual bands shall be 50 mm wide. Bands for gas and solution lines shall incorporate danger warning markers (black/yellow diagonal stripes) 50 mm wide giving a composite width of 150 mm.

Colours stated above refer to BS 4800 shades as follows:

<b>Colour</b>	<b>Code</b>
Yellow ochre	08 C 35
Violet	22 C 37
Green	12 D 45
Blue (auxiliary)	18 E 53
Yellow	08 E 51
White	00 E 55
Black	00 E 53

**TABLE F: IDENTIFICATION COLOURS FOR PIPES - HYDRATED LIME**

Steel pipework carrying hydrated lime slurry shall be painted black, colour code 00E53 with banding.

Pipework conveying hydrated lime slurry shall be banded with vinyl laminated identification tape to enable individual lines to be identified throughout their length. The banding shall conform to BS 1710 to indicate the fluid conveyed and shall have flow direction arrows, lettering and codings as described below.

(a) Lettering

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Lettering</b>	<b>Colour</b>	<b>Height</b>
Slurry	"LIME"	White	10mm
Service Water	Not applicable	-	-
Waste Water	"DRAIN"	White	5mm

(b) Banding

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Coded Bands</b>
Slurry	violet - danger marker - violet
Service water	green - blue - green
Waste water	black

Individual bands shall be 50mm wide.

Bands for slurry lines shall incorporate danger warning markers (black/yellow diagonal stripes) 50mm wide giving a composite width of 150mm.

Colours stated above refer to BS 4800 shades as follows:

<b>Colour</b>	<b>Code</b>
Violet	22C37
Green	12D45
Blue (auxiliary)	18E53
Yellow	08E51
White	00E55
Black	00E53

**TABLE G: IDENTIFICATION COLOURS FOR PIPES – ALUMINUM SULPHATE**

Pipeline shall be banded with vinyl laminated identification tape to enable individual lines to be identified throughout their length. The banding shall conform to BS1710 to indicate the fluid conveyed and shall have flow direction arrows, lettering and codings as described below:-

## (a) Lettering

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Lettering</b>	<b>Colour</b>	<b>Height</b>
Aluminium sulphate	"ALUM"	White	10mm
Dilution water	Not applicable	-	-
Wastewater "DRAIN"	White	5mm	

## (b) Banding

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Coded Bands</b>
Aluminium sulphate	Violet - danger marker - violet
Dilution water	Green or Green - blue - green (if drinking quality)
Wastewater Black	

Danger markers shall consist of black/yellow diagonal stripes 50mm wide.

The overall width of individual or composite bands shall be 150mm.

Colours stated above refer to BS4800 shades as follows:-

<b>Colour</b>	<b>Code</b>
Violet	22C37
Green	12D45
Blue (auxiliary)	18E53
Yellow	08E51
Black	00E53
White	00E55

**TABLE H: IDENTIFICATION COLOURS FOR PIPES - MISCELLANEOUS****Sample lines:**

Pipework conveying sample water shall be banded with vinyl laminated identification tape to enable individual lines to be identified throughout their length. The banding shall conform to BS 1710 to indicate the fluid conveyed and shall have flow direction arrows, lettering and codings as described below.

**(a) Lettering**

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Lettering</b>	<b>Colour</b>	<b>Height</b>
Sample	"SAMPLE XXX"	Black	5 mm
Wastewater	"DRAIN"	White	5 mm

Note that the approved sample designation for each line is to be substituted for "XXX".

**(b) Banding**

<b>Duty</b>	<b>Coded Bands</b>
Sample	Green (150 mm wide)
Wastewater	Black (50 mm wide)

Colours stated above refer to BS 4800 shades as follows:

<b>Colour</b>	<b>Code</b>
Green	12D45
White	00E55
Black	00E53

**Air pipework:**

Pipework conveying air shall be identified throughout its length in accordance with BS1710.

For steel pipework, the finish colour of the protective coating system generally shall be the basic identification colour, blue 20-E-51 to BS4800. Where this is precluded by use of high temperature paint finishes and/or the application of thermal insulation and cladding, then banding shall be applied in appropriate materials. The banding shall be 150 mm wide and in the same basic identification colour.

For non-steel pipework such as instrument air supply branches, identification shall be by means of banding generally as above except that the width of banding shall be limited to 50 mm.

## **PART D - MECHANICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

## **PART D - MECHANICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

### **D1.0 PUMPING PLANT**

#### **D1.1 Definitions**

For this Specification the following definitions shall apply:-

- |     |                         |  |
|-----|-------------------------|--|
| (a) | Design duty:            | The total head to be developed and the quantity of fluid to be discharged when the pump is running at rated speed;   |
| (b) | Static head:            | The difference between free water surface level on the suction side of the pump and the delivery level;  |
| (c) | External friction head: | The head required to overcome friction external to the Works (Frictional loss in the transmission main) and the velocity head at the outlet of the pumping main; |
| (d) | Station losses:         | The friction losses in valves and pipes within pump room;  |
| (e) | Internal losses:        | The frictional losses in the pump suspension main and head bend up to the delivery flange of vertical wet well pumps   |
| (f) | Total head:             | The sum of (b), (c), (d) and (e);  |
| (g) | Design duty head:       | The sum of (b) and (c);  |
| (h) | NPSHa :                 | Net positive suction head available at site  |
| (i) | NPSHr:                  | Net positive suction head required by the pump   |
| (g) | LWL:                    | Low Water Level at free water surface level on the suction side of the pump.   |
| (h) | HWL:                    | High Water Level at free water surface level on the suction side of the pump (during flooding)   |

‘Pumpset’ where used in this Specification and the schedules including the price schedules, shall mean the complete assembly of pump, motor, driving arrangement, and supporting headpiece or baseplate as appropriate.

Note:

All materials and workmanship shall comply with latest edition of the applicable standards and codes.

## **D1.2 Pump design and layout**

### **D1.2.1 General**

The head/quantity characteristics of pumps shall be stable at all rates of flow between closed valve and fully-open valve, and the characteristics shall be steep enough for satisfactory operation in parallel under all conditions specified.

Pump efficiency shall be well maintained over the whole of the specified duty range.

For vertical-shaft suspended pumps, the pump efficiencies quoted shall take into account shaft and rising main losses up to and including the pump discharge bend and pump coupling.

Lubrication arrangements shall be designed to avoid any contamination of the pumped fluid, except for raw-water pumps with shaft bearings lubricated by filtered raw water.

Pumps and associated pipework shall be arranged so that air can be completely removed during priming, using air-release valves at high points, and complete drainage is provided from low points by drain valves.

Pump suction and discharge flanges shall each be provided with 2 opposed plugged tappings for fitting pressure gauges and the like. The tappings shall be fitted with suitable metallic plugs for transport.

Arrangements for the easy handling of all pumping machinery shall be provided, by using lifting lugs or eyes as appropriate.

### **D1.2.2 Driving arrangements**

Unless otherwise specified, pumps shall be driven by electric motors and be directly coupled. Motors shall provide a power margin of not less than 10% above the maximum power absorbed by the pump in any possible operating condition.

### **D1.2.3 Seals, glands and sleeves**

If pumps are fitted with packed glands, the shafts shall be fitted with replaceable sleeves where they pass through the gland. Packing shall be readily replaceable and adjustable. If packed glands are used, effective means shall be provided for collection of the gland leakage water which shall be piped into the drainage system.

Pumps may be fitted with mechanical seals in place of packed glands only if the seals have a proven record of satisfactory running when fitted to the pump design in question, and with prior approval. Mechanical seals shall be readily adjustable and replaceable

Flushing facilities shall be provided for mechanical seals or packed glands if the pumped fluid may include abrasive material.

**D1.2.4 Raw water pumps**

Pumps for raw water shall be designed to avoid possible choking by weeds or any other material and shall be capable of passing 50 mm-diameter solids.

**D1.2.5 Bearings**

Pump bearings shall have a design running life of not less than 75 000 hours. Bearings shall be designed for loadings 20% in excess of calculated maximum loading and shall be suitable for reverse rotation at 150% of rated speed or the maximum reverse speed the pump can reach in installed conditions when driven backwards by reverse flow if this is greater.

Bearing cooling arrangements shall use closed circuits. Open discharge of cooling water into the pumping station drainage system is not permissible. The coolant flow shall be easily visible and local indication of bearing metal temperature shall be provided. Excessive metal temperatures shall result in safe shutdown of the pump.

**D1.2.6 Balancing**

Rotating assemblies shall be statically and dynamically balanced in accordance with ISO 1940–1. They shall be designed so that the first critical speed of the pump and its drive is at least 50% higher than the maximum operating speed. If rotating assemblies are small and out-of-balance forces are negligible, the Engineer may waive this requirement. For each pump, the manufacturer shall state whether or not balancing has been completed.

**D1.2.7 NPSH**

The NPSH requirements of pumps, based on the 2% output drop criterion, shall be at least 1m less than the NPSH available at every working condition at site maximum ambient temperature.

**D1.2.8 Velocities in pump branches**

Unless otherwise specified, the water velocity in the suction branches of a pump shall not exceed 1.5m/s and in the discharge branch shall not exceed 2.5m/s when the pump is operating within its specified working range. There shall be no discernible noise due to hydraulic turbulence or cavitation within the pump or its associated pipework and valves.

If discharge branch velocities exceed 2.5m/s in the working range, the use of profiled taper pipes will be allowed. Taper pipes shall be designed to reduce velocity progressively to not greater than 2.0m/s, using profiled internal contours which contain no steps or angles from which turbulence or cavitation can be generated. The taper pipes shall be considered as part of the pump and be included in performance calculations and tests.

**D1.2.9 Priming**

Unless otherwise approved, pumps shall be set at levels which ensure they are primed automatically at the lowest inlet water level which is possible in normal operation.



### D1.2.10 Base plates

If pump and motor are mounted on a combined bedplate, the bedplate shall be a substantial fabricated-steel construction or of cast iron. Holes for holding-down bolts shall be included, and all packing for levelling, and all holding-down bolts and the like shall be provided. Steel dowels shall be fitted after final alignment of pump and motor to facilitate dismantling and reassembly.

### D1.2.11 Pump performance

Pump performance guarantees shall relate to the flow rate, the total head and the efficiency of the pump when tested at the manufacturer's works. Verification of factory test results shall form part of the Site Tests on Completion.

Pumps shall operate at design duty within the acceptance tolerances for flow and total head laid down in ISO 3555.

Unless otherwise specified, at the time of tender the Contractor shall supply the performance curves for the pumps he is providing. The curves shall show total head, pump efficiency, power absorbed by the pump, and NPSHr plotted against flowrate for the full operating range required. The curves shall be extended to show shut valve conditions, and to show performance at flowrates at least 20% in excess of the maximum flowrate expected in normal operation at site conditions.

Where appropriate, curves shall also be included to show the variations in station losses and internal plant losses plotted against flowrate, to enable the complete pump performance curves to be shown.

If the Purchaser's estimated system curves for head against flow have been provided, the Contractor's pump curves shall be superimposed on the system curves to show conveniently the expected performance in site conditions.

Power consumption for tender adjudication and discounted cash flow will be calculated as shown below:

If the parameters A, B & C are given in the Particular Specification, the sum of weighted power consumptions of the pump when operating at separate points in the duty range shall be used, calculated as shown below.

If the parameters A, B, and C are not given, continuous operation at the design duty will be assumed.

$$\left( \frac{kWi}{kWo} \right)_m = A \times \left( \frac{kWi}{kWo} \right)_{ha} + B \times \left( \frac{kWi}{kWo} \right)_{hb} + C \times \left( \frac{kWi}{kWo} \right)_{hc}$$

where    kW<sub>i</sub>        =    kW power input at the motor terminals  
              kW<sub>o</sub>        =    kW gained by the water pumped  
              m            =    signifies the weighted power consumption

hb	=	pump design duty (which shall be guaranteed)
ha , hc	=	pump operating points at the limits of working range specified
A, B, C	=	percentages, reflecting the percentage of time the pump will operate at these points.

### **D1.3 End-suction pumps**

Pumps shall be horizontally-mounted complete with drive motor on a common baseplate. The coupling shall be of the spacer type to facilitate removal of the pump rotating element and bearing housing without dismantling the pump casing, adjoining pipework or motor.

The dimensions of the pump shall be metric conforming to BS 5257 or its equivalent. Flanges shall conform to BS 4504.

The velocity at the entrance to the pump impeller shall not exceed 3.5m/s.

Impellers shall be provided with means to prevent abrasive matter reaching the glands, and with fully-shrouded impellers to prevent the trapping of matter between the impeller vanes and the casing.

Pump speed shall not exceed 1,500 rpm unless otherwise specified.

### **D1.4 Concentric casing mixed flow and axial flow pumps**

#### **D1.4.1 General**

Suspended concentric casing pumps shall be to one of the following arrangements. The particular arrangement shall be as specified.

- The pump including shafting and suspension main supported by the motor stool with the discharge bend above motor floor level;
- The pump including shafting and suspension main supported by the motor stool with the discharge bend below motor floor level;
- The pump including shafting and suspension main supported by the discharge bend, and the motor supported at a higher level with the drive transmitted through an extension shaft fitted with universal couplings in matching pairs.

The requirements for the component parts shall be as follows:-

#### **D1.4.2 Casings**

Pump casings for mixed and axial flow pumps shall be designed to produce a concentric discharge from the casing around the pump shaft and through the suspension main.

Mixed flow pump casings shall be formed in two parts consisting of a bellmouth and main casing containing a diffuser of the guide-vane type. A central hub supported by the diffuser vanes shall provide the housing for the pump bearings. The bellmouth shall be provided with guide vanes when this is advantageous in promoting axial flow into the impeller. When the impeller is an unshrouded type the main casing shall be sub-divided into two sections, an impeller section and a diffuser section, the impeller section being renewable when blade clearance becomes excessive. For shrouded impellers, replaceable wear rings shall be fitted in the main casing at the impeller entry.

Axial-flow pump casings shall also be formed in two parts consisting of a suction bellmouth and a main guide-vane casing. A central hub housing the pump bearings shall be supported by discharge guide vanes in the pump casing.

#### **D1.4.3 Impellers**

Mixed-flow impellers of the shrouded type shall normally be fitted with wearing rings at the impeller to provide hydraulic balancing. The rings shall be renewable.

If the impellers are of the unshrouded type, means shall be provided for axial adjustment of the impeller at the pump thrust bearing. Impellers shall be keyed and positively secured to the pump shaft by fasteners fitted with locking devices.

Surfaces shall be machined or finished smooth all over.

#### **D1.4.4 Shafts**

Shafts shall be in sections to suit the bearing centres and shall be accurately machined all over. The design of the shaft and the positioning of the bearings shall ensure that the running speed is well below the first critical speed. Renewable shaft sleeves shall be securely fitted to the shaft where it passes through the bearings and stuffing box.

The couplings for the intermediate and pump shafts shall provide a positive non-slip drive between motor and pump. Shaft nuts for locking the couplings shall be guarded to prevent unscrewing from shaft rotation in either direction.

#### **D1.4.5 Bearings**

Thrust bearings shall be located within the motor support stool or the pump support pedestal, and shall be designed to withstand the hydraulic thrust and support the weight of the combined rotating assembly of pump shaft, impeller, and intermediate shafting.

For small and medium capacity pumps with moderate thrust loading, bearings shall be grease-lubricated combined ball or roller thrust and journal bearings. For large capacity pumps with high thrust loading, an oil-lubricated Michell combined thrust and journal bearing shall be fitted. The bearing shall be of the self-contained type with a cooling-water jacket incorporated in the bearing housing.

Intermediate shafting radial-support bearings shall be carried on spiders spigotted into the flanges of the suspension main sections. Normally, bearings shall be water lubricated using filtered water obtained from the pump discharge. Where specified, the shaft and bearing

shall be enclosed in a tunnel tube supplied with filtered water. The arrangements for supplying filtered water shall ensure:

- a) that filters used are duplex type so that one filter can be cleaned while the second remains in service;
- b) that if required by the bearing design, a filtered water supply is provided to each bearing before the shaft can begin to rotate.

The lengths of tunnel tubing shall correspond to the lengths of suspension main and shall be designed to fit positively against gaskets incorporated in the bearing spiders.

#### **D1.5 Multi-stage high-pressure pumps**

Pumps shall be horizontally-mounted multi-stage centrifugal type, complete with motor on a common baseplate. Pump speed shall not exceed 3,000rpm.

Pump shaft bearings shall be oil lubricated. The design shall ensure that axial loads are hydraulically balanced as far as possible. If required, axial hydraulic loads shall be balanced by an oil-lubricated thrust bearing. Lubrication arrangements shall be designed so that there is no contamination of the pumped fluid.

Dimensions shall be metric, conforming to API 610 or its equivalent. Inlet flanges shall conform to BS 4504 and delivery flanges shall conform to BS 1560: Part 2.

The velocity at the entrance to the pump impeller shall not exceed 3.5m/s.

#### **D1.6 Vertical turbine (VT) pumps**

Pumps shall be vertical and shaft-driven by vertical-shaft motors. Impellers shall be of the mixed or axial-flow multi-stage type, driven at a maximum speed of 1500 rpm unless otherwise specified.

Vertical-shaft driving motors shall be mounted on the discharge head above the discharge bend. Unless otherwise specified or approved, they shall be of the hollow-shaft type, fitted with an axially-adjustable thrust bearing designed to carry the combined weight of pump and motor rotating parts, the drive shaft with couplings, and hydraulic loadings.

Impellers and guide vanes shall be either surface-coated cast iron or cast bronze unless otherwise specified. Support bearings shall be provided between each impeller stage. The impeller shaft shall be corrosion-resistive low-alloy steel, designed for low stress and long life.

The drive-shaft couplings shall be designed to preserve true shaft alignment in all operating conditions, and shall be close to bearings. Coupling design shall provide for accurate assembly and re-assembly within the limits of the permissible end-float of the shaft.

The drive shaft and couplings shall be designed to withstand the maximum accelerating torque of the motor, with a factor of safety of at least two.

When required, the Contractor shall provide his design calculations to demonstrate that the shaft size chosen meets the requirement for safety factor given in the paragraph above.

Unless otherwise specified or approved, the drive arrangement shall incorporate an approved ratchet arrangement to ensure that if the pumps are driven in reverse for any reason, the motor is uncoupled from the pump.

Unless otherwise specified, the discharge pipework shall include an automatic air inlet/release valve, designed to vent the pipework on pump start and to allow air ingress when the pump stops. The valve shall be sized to ensure that accumulated air shall not be passed to the delivery pipework on starting.

If draining the column pipe on pump stopping could result in reverse rotation of the pump, means shall be incorporated to ensure that the pump cannot be restarted before reverse rotation stops.

#### **D1.6.1 Discharge head and mounting plate**

The discharge head shall be a composite fabrication or casting. The supporting-plate assembly shall consist of a steel baseplate, strong enough to carry the weight of the complete pumping unit without significant deflection. The assembly shall provide the motor mounting arrangement and support the pump.

If required, the supporting plate shall be supplied with a flanged sleeve to facilitate mounting, with a puddle flange for building in.

The following shall be included:

- supporting plate with holding down bolts or studs;
- bedplate ring with levelling screws and plates;
- lifting lugs
- fixings for motor and coupling;
- provision for insertion of cables and level-recording equipment if required;
- provision for access to service the shaft seal.

The discharge-head shaft seal shall be selected for long life with minimum maintenance, and may be of the mechanical or packed-gland type. Packed glands shall have an intermediate lantern ring, supplied with filtered water. The pressure limit of mechanical seals shall be at least 50% greater than the pump closed-valve delivery pressure. Provision shall be made to return to the pump well any water leaking past the head seal.

#### **D1.6.2 Water-lubricated line-shaft bearings:**

Bearings shall be spaced at the intervals needed to ensure vibrationless running at all possible pump operating speeds, with a maximum distance of 2.5m apart. Guide bearings shall be of resilient synthetic rubber, mounted in spider bearing-retaining assemblies.

Transmission shafts shall be of forged steel, with ground finish. The shaft sections shall be connected by mild-steel couplings and shall have machined left-hand or right-hand threads,

depending on the direction of rotation of the pump, to tighten during pump operation. Shaft sections shall be in lengths chosen to be the same as the guide-bearing spacing. The butting faces of each section shall be machined square to the axis of the shaft.

Means shall be provided to supply filtered water to each bearing. The arrangements for supplying filtered water shall ensure:

- a) that filters used are duplex type so that one filter can be cleaned while the second remains in service;
- b) that if required by the bearing design, a filtered water supply is provided to each bearing before the shaft begins to rotate.
- c) that if the installed arrangement makes any reverse rotation possible on pump stopping, if required by the bearing design a filtered water supply is provided to each bearing until reverse rotation stops.

### **D1.6.3 Pump column pipe**

Column pipe shall be steel, coated internally and externally with an epoxy bituminous solution or other approved protective coating.

The column pipe shall comprise a number of flanged sections, designed to suit the installation requirements. The sections shall be connected by welded-on flanges.

The butting flange faces of the riser pipe shall be machined square to the axis of the pipe.

The column pipe shall be provided with a long-radius flanged discharge bend at the top end. The bend shall incorporate the shaft sealing arrangement.

### **D1.7 Double-entry split-casing pumps**

Pumps shall be horizontally mounted and directly coupled to their motors. Pump and motor shall be mounted on a combined fabricated steel baseplate.

Pump casings shall be split along the axis of the shaft to allow the removal of the impeller and shaft assembly without dismantling the pipework. Half casings shall be dowelled to ensure alignment. Jacking screws shall be provided to facilitate dismantling.

Bearings shall be of the ball or roller type to BS 292 or BS 3134 as appropriate, or shall comprise phosphor bronze or white metal bearings, complete with means of lubrication and seals. Bearings shall be mounted outboard.

Where shafts are susceptible to wear at bearings and glands, renewable sleeves shall be fitted. Wear rings and bushes shall be fitted to the casing and impeller at the points of running clearance.

Unless otherwise specified, pump shafts shall be forged steel with ground finish, and impellers shall be zinc-free bronze. Pump casings shall be close-grained cast iron.

Provision shall be made for periodic lubrication of bearings without removal of any parts.

Glands may be fitted with suitable mechanical seals or conventional soft packing.

Flushing facilities shall be provided for packed glands and means shall be provided for collection of the gland-leakage water which shall be piped into a separate drainage system. Rotating assemblies shall be statically and dynamically balanced and shall be designed so that the first critical speed of the pump and its drive is at least 50% greater than the maximum operating speed.

Pump shall not exceed 1450rpm without approval.

#### **D1.8 Submersible sump drainage pumps**

Sump pumps shall be of the open-impeller centrifugal-type, vertically-mounted and close coupled to their fully-submersible electric motors.

Sump pumps of 1.5kW and under shall incorporate an integral level detector, control and motor starter and shall be powered only with a suitably-fused three-phase or single-phase low-voltage supply and with supply isolation at the supply point.

Sump pumps over 1.5kW shall be controlled and started from the supply point. Control shall be by means of adjustable float level switches mounted near the pump.

Pumps shall be supplied with all necessary pipework to discharge to surface drainage. Each pump shall be provided with delivery reflux and isolating valves, and suitable lifting gear for lowering and lifting the pump from the sump.

Pumps weighing 40kg or more shall be lowered into the sump on guide rails and be located to their respective discharge pipework with an angle flange connection and self-locating clamps.

Pump impellers shall be designed to pass solids of the sizes which pass through the inlet ports of the pump and shall be capable of pumping solids of up to 50mm diameter.

#### **D1.9 Progressive-cavity pumps**

Pumps shall be of the type in which a pumping action is generated by a helical rotor rotating eccentrically within a resilient stator in the form of a double internal helix. The eccentric motion of the rotor as it travels through the pump shall maintain a constant seal across the stator, to give a uniform positive displacement.

Pumps shall be arranged generally with a single shaft seal at the suction end. Mechanical seals shall be used. If a flexible shaft is used to accommodate the eccentric motion, a corrosion-resistant shroud shall be fitted to prevent fibre build-up on the shaft. Enlarged inspection access holes shall be fitted to the suction chambers of all pumps for periodic removal of accumulated debris.

The shaft bearings shall be positively isolated from the fluid being pumped.

The rotor material shall be selected for corrosion and abrasion resistance for the fluid being pumped, and for prolonged service life. Hard chrome or other approved coatings shall be not less than 250 micron thickness and shall be diffused into the base material. The rotor

shall generally be single-stage and shall incorporate not less than 360° of twist, but for high-head applications, it may be necessary to use more than a single-stage.

The stator shall be of a resilient material selected for chemical and abrasion resistance for the fluid being pumped.

Pump speed shall suit the application. Where variable delivery output is needed, the pump shall be provided with a variable-speed drive. The size and speed range of the pump shall ensure that the highest expected duty point shall lie within the available speed range.

Pumps shall normally be driven by a fixed-speed electric motor through reduction gearing and the combined drive shall be continuously rated. Pump and motor shall preferably be mounted in-line on a common base plate. Alternatively, the drive motor may be mounted above the pump to minimise floor area, and shall be connected by external V-belts and pulleys. V-belt drives shall have full guards which shall allow the belts to be observed without removal of the guard. Facilities shall be provided for ready adjustment of belt tension.

Rigid, securely fixed coupling guards shall be provided, designed so that removal is not necessary during normal operation, routine maintenance and routine inspections.

Motor enclosures shall be provided with protection to IP55. Motor anti-condensation heaters shall be provided and shall be suitable for use on a 220V single-phase, 50Hz supply.

Bearings shall have a B10 design life of not less than 100 000 running hours and shall be designed for loadings 20% in excess of calculated maximum loading.

Pumps shall be fitted with individual dry-running protection to initiate pump trip. Dry-running protection by 'under-current' monitoring or 'pipeline-intrusive' devices shall not be used.

Pumps shall be fitted with an over-pressure sensing device to detect high pressure in the delivery pipework immediately downstream of the pump. The device shall initiate pump trip over an adjustable range of 50% to 300% above normal operating pressure. Means shall be provided to prevent trip due to short time pressure transients.

#### **D1.10 Vacuum self-priming pumps**

Vacuum self-priming pumps shall be end-suction centrifugal pumps horizontally-mounted with their drives on a common baseplate. Pumps shall have automatic front and back priming, using a vacuum pump and priming tank incorporating a float valve to stop water entering the vacuum pump. Pumps shall be capable of handling solids and operating under 'snore' conditions.

Impellers shall be of the open-blade high-efficiency type, fully shrouded to prevent the trapping of matter between impeller vanes and casing. They shall pass up to 50mm solids. The pump wear plate shall be adjustable and replaceable. The pump shall be able to operate between 1,500rpm and 2,500rpm.

As a minimum, the pump component parts shall be manufactured from the following materials:-



Pump volute casing:	Cast iron
Shaft seal cover:	Cast iron (BS 1452)
Suction cover:	Cast iron (BS 1452)
Bearing housing:	Cast iron (BS 1452)
Wear plate:	Nodular iron (BS 2789)
Wear ring:	Stainless steel
Shaft:	Steel (BS 970)
Non-return valve box:	Cast iron (BS 1452)
Non return valve:	Oil-resistant polyurethane
Priming tank:	Cast aluminium (BS 1490)
Vacuum pressure seal:	Cast iron packing (BS 1490) with rubber 'O' ring.

The dimensions of the pump shall be metric conforming to BS 5257 or its equivalent. The discharge line shall have a non-return valve. The suction and discharge hose connections shall be quick-release couplings, sized so that the maximum suction or discharge velocity is not greater than 3m/s. Rotating assemblies shall be statically and dynamically balanced with the first critical speed of the pump and drive at least 30% greater than the maximum operating speed.

Glands may be fitted with suitable mechanical seals or conventional soft packing. The gland arrangements shall be designed for ease of adjustment and removal of the packing and seal. When soft-packed glands are used, shafts shall be sleeved in the area of the gland, and flushing facilities and drainage ports shall be provided

## **D1.11 Vacuum priming pumps**

### **D1.11.1 General**

Pumps shall be sized for the air extraction rate and the vacuum needed to prime the main pumps they serve. Unless otherwise specified, priming shall take no longer than 5 minutes with the lowest possible inlet water level.

Vacuum pumps shall be of the horizontally-mounted, water-ring rotary type, with no contacting parts except for bearings and shaft seals. They shall be directly coupled to horizontal-shaft caged induction motors, and mounted with the motor on a combined cast or fabricated-steel baseplate.

Pump maximum speed shall not exceed 1,500 rpm, and pumps shall operate within permissible vibration levels and with the minimum of noise.

Materials for pump components shall be chosen for long life in the specified service conditions with minimum maintenance. Design life shall be not less than 30,000 operating hours.

### **D1.11.2 Casings**

Pump casings shall be provided with feed-water tapings at the top part of the casing to provide sealing water. The tapings shall be individually valved, and connected to the delivery manifold of the main pumps they serve. If required to ensure an initial supply of sealing water

on starting, a suitable header tank shall be provided, which shall be filled through a ball valve from the delivery manifold of the main pumps, and connected to the feed-water tapping of each vacuum pump.

### **D1.11.3 Rotors**

Pump rotors shall be of the water-ring type, and shall be suitable for operation in a mixture of air and water.

### **D1.11.4 Pump shafts**

Pump shafts shall be designed to minimise deflection. Deflector plates shall be provided to prevent water seepage to the bearing housings.

### **D1.11.5 Bearings**

Pump bearings shall be designed for a minimum service life of 30,000 hours. Bearings shall be heavy duty, single or double-row anti-friction type, designed to support the rotating parts and to withstand any axial loads.

## **D2.0 PIPEWORK**

### **D2.1 Pipework within structures**

The term pipework shall include all necessary supports, saddles, slings, fixing bolts and foundation bolts required to support the pipes and associated equipment.

Pipework layout within pumping stations shall be agreed with the pump manufacturer.

Pipes and fittings over 100mm diameter and within buildings shall be steel.

Pipework shall be laid out and designed to facilitate the erection, painting in situ and dismantling of any section for maintenance and to give a constant and uniform flow of working fluid with a minimum of head loss. Where steel pipework is used, the number of flanges shall be kept to a minimum and the size of each length of pipework shall be determined by the ease of handling, installation and general appearance of the completed pipe system. Positions of flanges shall take account of any concrete pipe supports or thrust blocks needed.

Flexible joints shall be provided where needed to facilitate removal of Plant or to allow for differential settlement of the building. Wherever practical, flexible joints shall be provided with tie-bolts or other approved means to transfer thrust or tension axially along the pipework.

Where steel and cast flanges are to be bolted together, the steel flange shall be machined over its full face after welding to the pipe is completed. Flanges shall be finished truly square with the pipe axis. Wherever possible, standard fittings shall be used in preference to special fittings.

Facilities shall be provided for draining the pipe system and releasing air. The drained fluid shall be piped into the appropriate drainage system and the time for drainage shall not exceed 30 minutes.

Valves, strainers and other devices mounted in the pipework shall be supported independently of the pipes to which they connect.

Flanges shall be drilled in accordance with the appropriate pressure rating.

Where a pipe passes through a wall, a retaining wall, or is subject to end thrust, it shall incorporate a puddle flange. Puddle flanges shall be undrilled.

Unless otherwise approved, steel pipework in pumping stations shall be internally and externally coated with an approved two-component solvent-free, spray-applied epoxy coating.

## **D2.2 High-pressure pipes and fittings (over 24 bar)**

High-pressure pipework shall be of seamless or welded steel, complying with API

Specification 52 for line pipe.

Pipes and fittings shall be specified by nominal diameters.

The process of manufacture shall be as stated by the Contractor in the Form of Tender. Test and test certificates will be required for the pipework supplied under this Contract in accordance with Clauses 3.3 and 3.5 of API Specification 5L including ladle and check analyses of the steel. The pipework manufacturer shall perform fracture toughness tests in accordance with API Specification 5L and shall provide test certificates to show the pipe is suitable for use under the operating conditions specified at temperatures between  $-5^{\circ}\text{C}$  and  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

Steel specials for butt-welding shall comply with BS 1640: Part 3 or ANSI B16.9. All specials shall have the same strength and be compatible in all other respects with the line pipe with which they are to be used.

Carbon steel pipes shall be in accordance with BS 3601. Carbon steel fittings shall comply with BS 1965 Part 1

Pipework and fittings shall be completely fabricated and corrosion-protected at the maker's works.

Welding shall be in accordance with BS 2633 Class 1 arc welding. All welding and fabrication operatives shall be coded and tested by an independent inspection authority. The work shall be done manually by welders qualified for all-position welding to BS 2633 and the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer details of all welders whom he proposes to

employ. The Engineer's approval for any welder will be given only after the welder has satisfied the requirements of the welder tests prescribed by BS 4871: Part 1. The welder shall perform the relevant tests, and test certificates shall be provided by the Contractor for examination by the Engineer. The Engineer reserves the right to visit the premises where fabrication is taking place, to examine procedures, to inspect fittings, and to spot check where relevant all certification of materials and operatives employed on work being done for the Engineer.

The internal and external surfaces of the pipe shall be smooth, clean and free from grooving and other defects which might impair its functional properties. The ends of the pipe shall be cleanly cut square with the axis and free from deformity. The pipe shall be homogeneous throughout and uniform in colour, opacity, density and other physical properties. The pipe shall be delivered in the longest lengths possible to keep site jointing to a minimum.

### **D2.3 Dismantling joints, flexible couplings and flange adaptors**

Where dismantling joints, flexible couplings or flange adaptors are used these shall be of the Viking-Johnson type except where otherwise specified or approved.

Pressure ratings shall match the pressure rating of the pipework in which they are installed, and materials used and methods of protection shall not be inferior to those used for the pipework.

Where needed, joints and couplings shall be provided with tie bolts to restrain the maximum axial thrust arising when in service.

Detachable flexible couplings shall be suitable for the angular deflections specified below without leakage. Flange adaptors shall be suitable for half the angular deflection stated.

<b>Nominal pipe diameter</b> (mm)	<b>Angular deflection</b> (degrees)
Up to 600	5
601 to 750	4
751 to 900	3
901 to 1200	3
1201 to 1800	2
1801 upwards	1

Flexible couplings for each size of pipe shall also be capable of withstanding the shear force applied by the weight of a 4m length of pipe of that diameter full of water suspended between two couplings.

Detachable flexible couplings shall be provided with central registers or location plugs only where specified or detailed in the Drawings.

Flange adaptors shall have flanges as specified for flanged joints.

Bolts, nuts and washers shall comply with the requirements for bolts, nuts and washers for flanges.

The metal components of flexible couplings and flange adaptors shall be protected by thermoplastic polyamide or fusion-bonded epoxy coatings unless otherwise specified or detailed in the Drawings.

### **D3.0 VALVES**

#### **D3.1 General**

Valves shall be suitable for use with the fluid being conveyed at the temperatures and pressures required for the application. Unless otherwise approved, pressure designation shall not be less than PN 10.

Valves shall have integral flanges drilled as specified in BS 4504 where applicable. Flanges to other standards shall be used only if approved and provided that any differences do not affect mating dimensions. Back faces of flanges shall be machined.

Sluice valves and butterfly valves shall be suitable for flow in either direction.

Sluice valves shall comply with BS 5150 or 5163 as appropriate

Butterfly valves shall comply with BS 5155 / AWWA-C-504/1980. Reflux/check valves shall conform to BS 5153

Valves shall be suitable for frequent operation, and for infrequent operation after long periods of standing either open or closed.

Rubber used in valves shall be ethylene propylene rubber (EPDM or EPM) or styrene butadiene rubber (SBR). It shall comply with the requirements of Appendix B of BS 5155, be suitable for making a long term flexible seals, and be resistant to anything causing deterioration of the flexible seal.

#### **D3.2 Gate valves (Sluice valves)**

Gate valves shall comply with BS 5150 and be of the solid wedge-gate type with non-rising stems. Valves less than 250mm diameter may be of the resilient-seated type unless otherwise specified.

Gate valves up to and including 1000mm nominal diameter shall conform to the requirements of BS 5150 for copper-alloy faced or resilient-seated valves with solid or split wedge, except that gate valves up to and including 600mm nominal diameter may conform to BS 5163.

Gate valves larger than 1000mm nominal diameter shall comply with the materials and other relevant provisions of BS 5150.

Valve spindles shall be of the internal non-rising type. The valve spindle seal shall be replaceable with the valve fully open and the main under pressure.

Valves used with potable water shall not use any brasses which contain more than 5% zinc.

Valves 450mm and over shall be fitted with integral by-passes and gate jacking screws.

Valves below 80mm NB shall comply with BS 5154.

### **D3.3 High-pressure gate valves (over 24 bar)**

Gate valves shall be wedge type complying with BS 1414, Class 900. The pressure/temperature rating shall be in accordance with Table PE-1 of BS 1560: Part 2.

The wedge shall be plain solid-wedge type, made from the materials listed in Table PE-1 of BS 1560: Part 2.

Trim material (except the stem) shall be bronze to BS EN 1982: LG2 as listed in Table 2 of BS 1414.

The stem shall be stainless steel 18-8 Ti as listed in Table 2 of BS 1414.

Flanged ends shall be Class 900 raised-face type, complying with ANSI B16.25 or Table PE-1 of BS 1560: Part 2.

Butt-welded ends shall be in accordance with Clause 8.7 of BS 1414.

Operation shall be by hand wheel or square head and tee key as shown in the Drawings.

One body tapping shall be provided in the bottom of the valve in accordance with Clause 8.9 of BS 1414 for drainage. Tappings shall be provided with a plug.

A valved by-pass shall be provided in accordance with Clause 17.2 of BS 1414. The materials of the by-pass shall be at least of the same standard as those specified for the main valve.

### **D3.4 Reflux /Check valves**

Reflux/check valves shall be designed for rapid closing without slamming no later than the moment forward flow stops. The valve size and design shall be chosen to give the best performance possible, taking account of the system where the valve is installed. The effect of any surge vessel in the system as well as the static and dynamic heads shall be included in the assessment.

If self-closing without slamming cannot be achieved, external mechanisms may be used to control the closure rate. Details of mechanisms shall be subject to approval.

Valves shall preferably be fitted with resilient faces or seats.

Check valves used in raw water systems shall not be installed vertically, or positioned so that water-borne solids can settle against the valve flap when the flap is closed.

### **D3.5 Butterfly valves**

Unless otherwise specified, valve body and disc shall be of close-grained grey cast iron. and valves shall be mounted with shafts horizontal.

Valves shall be fitted with indicators to show the position of the disc, clearly marked with 'open' and 'closed' positions.

Valves shall not contain any brasses containing more than 5% zinc. Gunmetal to BS 1400 Grade LG2, aluminium bronze, or nickel components may be used for internal components.

Resilient-seated valves shall have nitrile rubber seals. For valves of 900mm and above, retaining rings shall be provided to enable the sealing ring to be replaced without the need to remove the valve body from the pipe work.

Metal-seated valves of 900mm and above, shall be have seat clearances adjustable to obtain as near a watertight condition as possible, without the need to remove the valve body from the pipe work.

### **D3.6 Pressure and flow control valves**

#### **D3.6.1 General**

Pressure-control valves and flow-control valves shall be designed for the operating conditions specified.

Valves shall be capable of controlling the required flow or pressure within plus and minus 5 percent of the set value. The rate of response of opening and closing of the main valves shall be controllable at the valve. External indication of the position of the valve element shall be provided.

Hydraulic control systems shall include isolating valves to allow maintenance or replacement without interrupting the supply.

#### **D3.6.2 Altitude valves**

Altitude valves shall be designed for installation at the base of ground-level or elevated storage tanks, as shown on the Drawings, to prevent overfilling.

The main valve shall be controlled by a slave ball cock mounted in the tank at top water level and connected to the valve operating mechanism by small-bore pipe work. The level of the ball shall be readily adjustable so that the main valve closes fully when the water level reaches maximum.

#### **D3.6.3 Flow-control valves**

Flow-control valves shall be designed to prevent the flow downstream rising above that specified or shown on the Drawings for the particular application, regardless of the operating pressures in the system upstream or downstream of the valve.

#### **D3.6.4 Pressure-sustaining valves**

Pressure-sustaining valves shall be designed to maintain the pressure in the pipeline immediately upstream of the valve to a preset minimum value, irrespective of the flow and pressure downstream of the valve.

The set pressure shall be adjustable. A pressure gauge shall be provided to indicate upstream pressure over the operating range of the valve.

#### **D3.6.5 Pressure-relief valves**

Pressure-relief valves shall be designed to prevent the pressure in the pipeline upstream of the valve rising above a preset level. The valve shall remain closed at lower pressures.

The pressure at which the valve opens shall be adjustable. A pressure gauge shall be provided to indicate upstream pressure over the operating range of the valve.

Safety valves shall comply with BS 6759: Part 1. They shall be designed to open at the specified pressure and re-close and prevent further release of fluid after normal pressure has been restored. The pressure / temperature rating shall be in accordance with Table PE–1 in BS 1560: Part 2.

Shell material shall be from the materials listed in Table PE–1 BS 1560: Part 2.

Flanged ends shall be Class 900, raised-face type complying with ANSI B16.25 or Table PE–1 or BS 1560: Part 2. Butt-welded ends shall be in accordance with Section 8 of BS 1868.

#### **D3.6.6 Pressure-reducing valves**

Valves shall be capable of maintaining a constant downstream pressure from a higher upstream pressure and they shall be drop-tight under no-flow conditions.

A pressure gauge shall be provided to indicate downstream pressure over the operating range of the valve.

Valve operation shall be controlled by the interaction of the inlet pressure, outlet pressure and an intermediate pressure produced by a pilot valve or relay system acting on the upper side of the main valve.

The pilot valve or relay system shall be actuated by a diaphragm connected to the outlet pressure on its underside and a constant pressure on its upper side, derived either from weights or from a spring.

Valves shall be flanged and drilled to BS 4504 for the operating pressure required.

Materials for valves shall be as follows:—



Component	Material
Body and cover	Cast iron
Internal valve	Gunmetal with bronze liner, cups and facing rings in leather
Relay valve	Bronze with stainless steel shaft and nylon valve face
Diaphragm	Reinforced synthetic rubber
Loading spring, If employed	Spring steel
Cylinder & weights, If employed	Cast iron
Lever	Steel with gunmetal pins and links
Connecting pipework to cylinder	Copper
Cylinder	Mild steel epoxy lined with internal working parts gunmetal bushed

#### **D3.6.7 Automatic air-relief valves**

Air valves shall be provided as specified or shown on the Drawings, to achieve the following:-

- (a) To exhaust air automatically during filling, the air being released fast enough to prevent back pressure restricting water inflow.
- (b) To ventilate pipework automatically during emptying, the air inflow being fast enough to prevent the development of any significant negative pressure.
- (c) To release air automatically during normal working.

Conditions (a) and (b) shall be met by using an orifice capable of handling large volumes of air at a high-flow rate in either direction. Condition (c) shall be met by using a small orifice capable of discharging small volumes of air as they accumulate.

Valves shall have approved screens to prevent the ingress of foreign matter.

Air valves shall be of one of the following types:-

- (a) Double valves shall combine both large and small orifices in one valve. The large orifice shall be sealed by a float and the valve shall be designed to avoid premature closing of the valve by the discharging air. The small orifice shall be sealed by a float at all pressures above atmospheric, except when air accumulates in the valve body.
- (b) Single large orifice type for automatic ventilation or exhaust of pipework.
- (c) Single small orifice type for automatic release of air under normal working pressure.

Large orifice air valves, including those incorporated in double air valves, shall be constructed so that the air flow holds the valve open during discharge of air at all flows possible in service. When coupled to their respective isolating valves, they shall be capable of admitting or exhausting the required quantities of free air without the pressure differential across the combined air valve and isolating valve exceeding 0.5 bar.

Small orifice air valves, including those incorporated in double air valves, shall be capable of

discharging not less than 0.5 m<sup>3</sup>/min of free air when the pressure in the pipeline is at the maximum working pressure.

Balls or floats shall be of ABS, vulcanite, rubber-covered metal, stainless steel, or other approved materials, and shall operate automatically at all pressures up to the test pressure. Orifices shall be bronze or stainless steel.

Air valves shall be designed so that each float seats against its orifice or causes the orifice to be closed without leakage at all pressures between 0.2 bar g. and the specified test pressure. Balls and seats shall be designed to minimise adhesion of the ball to the seat. They shall be of a type proven to be suitable for the specified duties.

Each air valve shall be provided with an isolating valve, which shall be an integral lever-operated isolating ball valve.

Each small orifice or double air valve shall be fitted with a test cock in the valve body for verification that the small orifice air valve is operating properly.

Body ends shall be flanged with raised faces and drilled to BS 4504 for the nominal pressure specified.

The materials for valves shall be not inferior to the following:

- body cover and cowl: cast iron;
- small orifice: cast iron with gunmetal seat;
- small orifice ball: rubber-covered or other approved;
- large orifice: cast iron with rubber seat;
- large ball: Vulcanite covered or other approved.

#### **D3.6.8 Ball floats valves**

Ball float valves shall be designed for installation on the inlet to a storage tank and shall automatically shut off when the water reaches a predetermined level. They shall be of the single beat type with balancing piston, resilient seatings, and direct float and lever operation.

Ball float valves shall be suitable for long-term operation when partly open.

#### **D3.6.9 Plug valves**

Plug valves shall conform where applicable to BS5158/IS 10459.

Plug valves shall be of the non-lubricated type, resilient rubber covered and be designed for low operating torque.

Valves shall be of quarter turn operation from fully open to fully closed. In the fully open position, flow shall pass straight through the valve.

Plug valves shall not be used for throttling.

Plugs shall be spring loaded to compensate for wear, ensure tight closure and provide easy operation.

An indicator shall be provided on the end of the valve stem to confirm the plug position.

#### **D3.6.10 Diaphragm valves**

Diaphragm valves shall conform where applicable to BS5156.

For steel or ductile iron pipework the body shall be cast iron. When used with abrasive materials, the body shall be suitably lined.

Where used for abrasive material, the diaphragm material shall be selected for maximum resistance to abrasion.

For slurry or sludge applications, valves shall be of the straight-through type.

#### **D3.6.11 Ball valves**

Ball valves shall conform where applicable to BS5159.

Multi-piece bodies shall be used where work on the ball and seats when installed may be needed. If valves need removal for servicing, one-piece bodies may be used.

Seat materials shall be chosen for long life, with erosion and corrosion resistance.

Ball supports shall be of the floating ball or trunnion type. If line pressure is too low to ensure a positive leak-free seal, built-in seat loading devices, or specially shaped seatings shall be used to ensure sealing.

#### **D3.6.12 Float-controlled valves (delayed-action type)**

Float-controlled valves for regulating flow into a reservoir or tank shall be angle type, mounted at the end of the supply line and discharging downwards.

Valves shall be controlled by the action of the float on a pilot valve, with sensitive response to small forces. Valves shall close drop-tight.

Floats shall be mounted within a stilling tank, as shown in the Drawings.

The stilling tank shall fill through a siphon pipe and empty through a subsidiary ball cock, so that the tank cannot begin to fill until the water in the reservoir reaches top level. The tank then fills completely and the valve moves from fully-open to fully-closed in one continuous stroke.

Similarly, valve opening shall not start until low-water level is reached.

Valves shall be suitable for closing against the maximum possible operating head.

### **D3.7 Penstocks (Sluice gates) and headstocks**

#### **D3.7.1 General**

Penstocks shall be of cast iron or plastic construction as specified and suitable for either on-seating or off-seating as specified. Apertures may be rectangular or circular.

On-seating penstocks shall be drop tight at their operating seating pressure, unless otherwise approved.

The leakage rate for off-seating penstocks shall be stated by the Contractor and will be subject to approval.

#### **D3.7.2 Penstocks — cast iron**

Penstocks shall be cast iron complying with BS 1452 not less than Grade 12 and to the dimensions specified.

Penstocks shall be flat-backed for wall mounting or be provided with short spigots for building into an opening, Penstock apertures shall be rectangular or circular.

Seating surfaces shall be gunmetal to BS 1400 LG2, or bronze to BS 2874, hand-scraped and securely fixed to frame or door.

Penstocks shall be suitable for either on-seating or off-seating pressures as required by the application, and shall be drop-tight at their operating seating pressures.

Rising or non-rising shafts shall be provided, as specified.

Rising shafts shall be mild steel, connected to the door and working through a gunmetal nut rotated by the operating gear. Rising-shaft penstocks shall be provided with head and foot brackets, or foot brackets only as required.

Non-rising shafts shall rotate in a gunmetal nut in the door, and shall be of manganese bronze or phosphor bronze. For long shafts, only the screwed portion need be of manganese bronze or phosphor bronze.

Extension shafts shall be provided with sockets which engage the penstock shafts. A securing bolt, locked in position, shall unite the 2 shafts.

Guide brackets shall be provided wherever necessary.

Operating handwheels shall be big enough diameter to enable the required duty to be achieved.

Hand-operated weir penstocks shall be lockable in any position.

### **D3.7.3 Penstocks — plastic**

Plastic penstocks shall be suitable for wall mounting or building in, and shall have circular or rectangular apertures.

Frames shall be of epoxy-coated mild steel or continuously-welded stainless steel grade 316 S16. They shall be suitably reinforced and include corner gussets. All fasteners shall be stainless steel grade 304 S16.

Frames shall be fitted with plastic seals molecularly incompatible with the gate material, and have a coefficient of friction of less than 0.1. Provision shall be made for easy, on-site adjustment of the seals by means of easily-replaceable stainless steel fasteners. Where a flush invert is required, the seal shall be an integral part of the lower frame member and manufactured from a resilient material having a Shore hardness of 80A.

Gates shall be manufactured from suitably-reinforced composite materials, which are non-toxic, ultraviolet-stabilised and comply with Class 1 fire resistance. The material shall have a linear coefficient of expansion not more than 0.000016 per degree Celsius. The bottom of the gate shall be angled to provide a knife-edge seal.

Penstocks shall be suitable for either on-seating or off-seating pressures and shall be drop-tight at their operating seating pressures.

Either rising or non-rising shafts shall be provided. They shall be mild steel or stainless steel grade 303 S21 or 316 S16. The shaft nut shall be machine cut from solid plastic material or gunmetal.

### **D3.7.4 Headstocks**

Where remote operation of penstocks, gate or butterfly valves is required they shall generally be as shown on the Drawings, using headstocks or headstocks with operating shaft extensions.

Headstocks for direct connection to valves or penstocks shall be for use with non-rising stem valves. They shall be cast iron and fitted with position indicators. Stem bearings shall be gunmetal bushed.

If operational conditions require, handwheels shall operate through bevel gears.

If the installation requires, extensions shall be provided between penstock or valve and headstock. Extension lengths shall be adjustable during assembly on Site. Universal couplings shall be fitted next to the valve and the headstock, and the two couplings shall be arranged to give linear transmission of rotational movement between headstock and penstock shaft.

## **D3.8 Valve Operation**

### **D3.8.1 Shafts and caps for tee-key operated valves**

Operating and extension shafts for valves operated by tee key shall be capped.

Extension shafts shall be circular section. For valves installed in chambers, extension shafts shall be provided with split bearings, rigidly held on brackets spaced no more than 1,500 mm apart. For buried valves, the shaft shall be supported inside a protecting tube held on a purpose-made support, which shall be fixed to the top of the valve and provided with a shaft guide.

Bearings and shafts shall be suitably protected against corrosion.

Extension shaft couplings shall be provided with locking arrangements.

### **D3.8.2 Manual operating mechanisms**

Manual closing of valves shall be by the clockwise rotation of a tee key or hand wheel.

Tee-key operated valves shall be provided with detachable cast iron shaft caps, with keys to match the cap. One key shall be supplied for every five valves installed, with a minimum requirement of two keys in any one size.

Hand wheels shall be shaped to give a safe grip without sharp projections, clearly marked with the direction of opening and closing and shall be fitted with integral locking devices. A padlock and chain will not be acceptable for locking.

Manually-operated valves and penstocks shall be capable of being opened and closed by one person, when the specified maximum unbalanced pressure is applied to the valve or penstock. Under this condition the total force required at the rim of the hand wheel or at the tee key to open the valve or penstock from the closed position shall not exceed 30 kg (15 kg each hand). Where necessary, gearing and bearings shall be provided and the hand wheel sized to fulfill this requirement.

Gearboxes shall be totally enclosed oil bath lubricated. Thrust bearings shall be provided so that the gear case may be opened for inspection or be dismantled without releasing the stem thrust or taking the valve or penstock out of service. Oil and grease lubricated gearing, bearings and glands shall be protected against the ingress of dust and moisture.

Operating mechanisms shall be of the weatherproof type and those parts subject to submergence shall have a degree of protection IP68 to BS 5490 at a depth of submergence of 5 m. Where practicable, operating mechanisms shall be fitted with mechanical position indicators clearly visible from the operating position.

Headstocks of the non-rising shaft type shall each have an index pointer working over a graduated, open-to-closed position indicator fixed to the side of the pillar.

### **D3.8.3 Solenoid-operated valves**

Solenoid-operated valves shall be of the direct acting type, full bore and balanced. They shall not depend upon pressure differential for their operation.

Valve bodies shall be of cast iron or stainless steel as specified with screwed or flanged ends. Sealing shall be by 'O' rings.

Solenoids shall have direct current coils and an integral rectifier for use on a 220 V A.C. supply unless otherwise specified. The coils shall be encapsulated in epoxy resin.

Limit switches with voltage-free changeover contacts shall be provided for remote signalling of open and closed positions.

Enclosures shall have a minimum degree of protection IPW 67 to BS 5490.

A manual mechanical override shall be fitted.

#### **D3.8.4 Pneumatic actuators – on/off type**

Pneumatic actuators of the double or single acting type, with or without spring closing, shall be provided as specified. Cylinders shall provide satisfactory operation using dry, oil-free air at 5.5 bar g pressure and shall be factory tested for pressure retaining integrity at 16.5 bar g.

The valve actuator mechanism shall be totally enclosed. The cylinder shall be rigidly secured to the mechanism housing and shall not pivot, rotate, or swing during operation. The piston rod shall be enclosed in the housing and shall not be exposed to view.

Pneumatic actuations shall be fitted with a local valve-position indicator and handwheel-operated manual override. If pneumatic actuators are used on fail-close valves, means shall be provided for automatic closing on supply air failure.

A 4-port solenoid valve shall be provided to control the operation of double-acting actuators and a 2-port solenoid valve shall be provided for single acting actuators. Each solenoid valve shall be heavy-duty, single 24 V dc coil, two-position type, rated for a differential operating-air pressure of 8.5 bar g, with manual override facility.

In general the solenoid valves shall comply with the Specification for solenoid-operated valves.

Pneumatic actuators in areas specified in the instrumentation, control and automation section of this specification as being fieldbus system areas shall be able to be connected to the chosen fieldbus system. If there are no pneumatic actuators available that meet this requirement, use of conventional i/o wiring for the actuator involved shall be subject to approval.

The air connections on each cylinder shall be equipped with an adjustable flow-control valve. The flow-control valves and connecting piping shall be arranged to control the flow rate of exhaust air from the cylinder and to allow independent adjustment and control of valve opening and closing speeds.

Control valves shall be sized so that the time required for the piston to complete its stroke is adjustable between 30 and 120 seconds, with an air supply pressure of 5.5 bar g. Flow-control valves shall be brass or stainless steel.

Actuators shall be designed to eliminate any risk of contact between the actuator lubricant and the fluid conveyed.

### **D3.8.5 Pneumatic actuators – modulating type**

Pneumatic actuators of the double or single acting type with or without spring closing shall be provided as specified.

Actuators shall provide satisfactory operation using dry, oil-free air at 5.5 bar g pressure and shall be factory tested for pressure-retaining integrity at 16.5 bar g.

The actuator shall be rigidly secured to the mechanism housing and shall not pivot, rotate, or swing during operation. The actuator shaft shall be enclosed in the mechanism housing and shall not be exposed to view.

Pneumatic actuators shall be fitted with a local valve-position indicator and hand wheel-operated manual override. If pneumatic actuators are used on fail-close valves, means shall be provided for automatic closing on supply air failure. Otherwise, actuators shall be provided with the appropriate fail safe devices.

Actuators for modulating valves shall have the following accessories:

- An electronic or digital positioner which can accept 4-20 mA input signal and position the valve accordingly.
- An electronic position transmitter to provide 4-20 mA feed back of the valve position.
- Air sets in the supply and signal air lines.
- Pressure gauges of appropriate ranges in the supply and signal air lines.
- Limit switches to indicate fully open and fully closed positions.

Pneumatic actuators in areas specified in the instrumentation, control and automation section of this specification as being fieldbus system areas shall be able to be connected to the chosen field bus system. If there are no pneumatic actuators available that meet this requirement, use of conventional i/o wiring for the actuator involved shall be subject to approval.

The air connections on each actuator shall be equipped with adjustable flow-control valves. The flow-control valves and connecting piping shall be arranged to allow control of the flow rate of exhaust air from the actuator and to allow independent adjustment and control of valve opening and closing speeds. Control valves shall be sized so that the time required for the cycle time is adjustable between 30 and 120 seconds, with an air supply pressure of 5.5 bar g. Flow control valves shall be manufactured from brass or stainless steel.

The actuator shall be designed to eliminate any risk of contact between the actuator lubricant and the fluid conveyed.

### **D3.8.6 Electric actuators**

Electric actuators shall operate valves and penstocks at opening and closing rates that will not impose unacceptable surge pressures on the pipework.



Actuators shall be rated at not less than 20 percent in excess of the power required to operate the valve or penstock under maximum working conditions.

Actuator enclosures shall have a minimum protection IPW 67 to BS EN 60529.

Actuator electric motors shall comply with BS 4999. For non-modulating type actuators, the motor short-time rating (STR) shall allow the successive full travel operation of the travel from open to closed and vice versa but shall be not less than 15 minutes. For modulating type actuators the motor shall have a duty-type rating (DTR) to meet the varying cyclic load requirements of the valve.

Electric motors shall be provided with built-in thermal protection complying with BS 4999: Part 111.

Actuators shall be complete with:

- (a) An alternative system for manual handwheel and reduction gear operation which shall be lockable.
- (b) An interlock, to prevent engagement of the handwheel whilst the actuator is being power driven and to disengage the manual drive positively when the power drive is started.
- (c) Reversing type motor starter complete with isolating switch.
- (d) Local and remote control selector switch when specified, which shall be lockable.
- (e) Open, stop and close push-buttons.
- (f) Potentiometer for remote valve position indication when remote control is specified.
- (g) Torque switches for mechanical disengagement of the drive at the extremes of valve operation to limit excess torque.
- (h) Supply failure and remote control available monitoring relays. The supply failure relay shall operate under single phasing and phase reversal conditions.
- (i) Auxiliary and interposing relays as necessary.
- (j) Voltage-free changeover type contacts for the remote indication of:
  - Motor tripped on overload
  - Fully open
  - Fully closed
  - Operating
  - Supply failed
  - Remote control available

The rating of volt-free contacts shall be not less than 15 A at 240V a.c. and 2 A at 50V d.c. unless otherwise specified. The contacts shall be suitable for inductive load switching.

(k) Anti-condensation heater

Separate or segregated terminal boxes shall be provided for the connection motor, heater and control cables.

### **D3.9 Valve packaging and installation**

#### **D3.9.1 Marking and packing**

Each valve shall be indelibly marked with the diameter and pressure rating and shall carry a unique reference number to enable each item to be clearly identified with works fabrication records, works test certificates, delivery notes and the like.

Wherever possible, the identification marks shall be painted on the outside of the item but where there is not enough smooth surface area for the identification marks they shall be put on rust-proofed metal tags secured to the item with galvanised wire or chain (not through flange holes).

Valves shall be packed in the 'closed' position except that uncrated resilient seat gate valves for transport to tropical areas shall be in the 'open' position.

#### **D3.9.2 Valve handling**

The Contractor shall provide all equipment needed to handle and install valves and associated equipment without damage. The equipment shall include lifting beams, reinforced canvas slings, protective padding, cradles and the like. Unprotected wire rope or chain slings shall not be used for handling.

Temporary packing, coverings or crates provided for protection in transit shall not be removed (except for inspections, after which they shall be replaced) until immediately before installation.

#### **D3.9.3 Valve installation**

Valves shall be installed and commissioned in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. After installation, valves shall be cleaned, and gates, discs, seats and other moving parts closely inspected, foreign matter removed, and the valves checked for ease of operation. Moving parts shall be lightly greased or otherwise treated in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

Unless otherwise specified or directed by the Engineer, butterfly valves shall be enclosed in chambers, installed with the shaft horizontal, and supported as detailed on the Drawings. They shall be installed so that when the valve is opening the lower portion of the disc moves in the direction of the main or normal flow.

Unless shown otherwise on the Drawings, gate valves shall be installed with their shafts vertical.

Gate valves without external gearing, and not otherwise required to be in a chamber, may be buried. The buried part of the valve shall be protected as specified. Unless otherwise

specified, backfilling shall be to just below the top of the valve or shaft shroud, and a surface box shall be provided.

Jointing, sleeving, external wrapping, anchor and thrust blocks, valve chambers, valve marker posts and the cleaning and disinfection of valves shall be executed as specified for the associated pipeline.

#### **D4.0 COMPRESSORS AND SURGE VESSELS**

##### **D4.1 Compressors for surge vessels**

The term 'compressed-air unit' shall include drive motor, base frame and all directly associated valves, switches and pipework required to form a fully-automatic unit supplying compressed air, continuously or intermittently as required, and at the specified rate and pressure.

Compressors shall be rated for continuous operation at full duty.

Cylinder heads shall be readily removable for inspection. Each cylinder shall be constructed to provide easy replacement and maximum cooling.

All necessary fittings shall be provided including:

- air-line check valve;
- delivery-pipe isolating valve;
- air filters.

Medium-duty air-compressor units, of which there shall be at least one duty and one standby, shall each comprise:

- reciprocating air compressor;
- induction drive motor;
- air receiver and filter;
- silencer;
- oil lubricator;
- oil-eliminating filter;
- air delivery line, including check valve, isolating valve, moisture trap and pressure regulator.

Compressors shall be tested in accordance with BS 1571.

Inlet and outlet pressure gauges shall be provided on the air receiver, and each gauge shall incorporate low and high pressure micro-switches with changeover contacts. A pressure-relief valve shall be fitted near the pressure gauge, rated to pass at least 200% of the compressor rated flow at 150% of the working pressure.

## **D4.2 Surge vessels**

Vessels shall be cylindrical steel pressure vessels, designed, constructed and tested to BS 5500. Each vessel shall include:

- (a) saddle supports and legs complete with holding-down bolts;
- (b) drilled-and-tapped or flanged facings for the following fittings which shall be provided:
  - pressure-relief air valve rated for not less than 150% working pressure and to pass 200% maximum air flow into vessel;
  - adequate access for inspection of the inside of the vessel;
  - calibrated level sight glass of the reflective type covering the full range of water level in the vessel and having top and bottom shut-off cocks and hinged safety glass, and pressure/level calibrations carried on a substantial engraved plate;
  - air vent and inlet valves;
  - 150mm diameter pressure gauge and isolating cock;
  - lifting lugs to enable handling of the vessel on Site without damage;
  - flanged inlet and outlet branches;
  - drain valve;
  - high and low water level float switch with stilling tube and changeover-contact micro-switches rated for 220V/420V ac for both high and low level settings.
  - all necessary pipes, fittings, brackets, fixings and the like required to mount system onto the pumping main.

Unless otherwise specified, surge vessels shall be of the diaphragm type, containing a removable liner of neoprene or similar material and an expansion cage. The liner and expansion cage shall be designed to accept a charge of air to given pressures for given volumes as stated in the detailed specification for surge protection equipment.

In accordance with BS 5500, an inspection and regulating authority shall be selected and appointed by the Contractor for the surge equipment.

The name and address of the Authority and extent and details of inspection to be done shall be submitted for approval before manufacture commences.

## **D5.0 CRANES**

### **D5.1 Electric overhead travelling cranes**

#### **General requirements**

Cranes shall be designed and constructed in accordance with BS 2573 and shall comply with the requirements of BS 466: Class 2 medium-duty operation.

The term 'crane' shall be deemed to include gantry rails, platform with handrails for maintenance use, down-shop conductors, end stops, holding-down bolts and all other items required for complete installation.

Cranes shall be prominently marked with their SWL on both sides of the crane bridge girders.

Crane hooks shall be fitted with safety catches and the hook block shall incorporate fully-guarded rope sheaves.

The maintenance platform shall be designed to provide safe access to the crane machinery and all high-level lighting and roof-mounted ventilation plant. Access to the platform shall be by fixed stairway from a convenient point in the pump hall.

Enough slings, ropes, shackles, lifting beams and the like shall be supplied to handle all the plant to be served by the crane. They shall be labelled or marked with the safe working load (SWL) and the purpose for which they are intended.

The crane, and all other lifting equipment supplied shall be tested by the manufacturer at his works. The tests shall be at 125% of safe working load, and test certificates shall be submitted by the Contractor.

Site tests shall be done by the Contractor who shall supply the necessary materials for the test loads. The test loads shall be removed from Site by the Contractor after successful tests have been completed.

### **Electrical requirements**

All movements shall be electrically powered and be suitable for operating with the hook fully loaded. Motors shall be of the quick-reversing type with electro-mechanical brakes suitable for the duties specified. Limit switches shall be incorporated to prevent excess travel, or over-hoisting and over-lowering of the crane hook. Facilities shall be provided for the accurate location of the hook by means of 'inching' all the motions.

Crane operation shall be from ground floor level by bridge-mounted pendant push-button controls. Controls shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent inadvertent operation of opposing motions. The pendant shall be supported independently of the electric cable and shall be arranged for extending for operation when necessary.

Down-shop conductors shall be of the fully-insulated shrouded busbar type. The current collectors shall have renewable contact pieces. Festoon cables may be used for cross travel. A crane isolator, lockable in the 'off' position and incorporating a warning lamp, illuminated when the supply is 'on', shall be provided at the bottom of the access ladder. A second isolator shall be provided at the control cubicle located on the crane platform.

The Contractor shall supply all necessary contactors, control cubicles and protection equipment necessary to operate the crane and provide adequate electrical protection against overload, phase and earth fault and fail-safe protection if the power supply fails.

All electrical equipment shall be fully tropicalised. Motors and switchgear shall be provided with anti-condensation heaters, which shall be energised when the crane is at rest, and suitable warning notices shall be provided.

## **D5.2 Hand-operated overhead cranes**

Cranes shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with BS 2573 and shall comply with the requirements of BS 466 Class 2 medium duty.

The crane details and ancillary equipment provided shall conform with applicable parts of the General Requirements specified above for electrically-operated overhead cranes, except that the crane shall be manually-operated in all motions by conveniently-mounted endless chains, arranged for operation by one man.

## **D6.0 COMPRESSED AIR PLANT**

### **D6.1 General**

Compressed air plant shall include at least one duty and one standby compressor set which shall be electrically driven by cage induction motors.

Air shall be filtered at the compressor inlets to remove dust.

Oil lubricated compressors may be used provided that oil eliminating filters are installed on the compressor deliveries. Where oil-mist lubrication is recommended for pneumatic valve actuators, suitable lubricators shall be installed at each point of air use.

Air shall be cooled after compression using after-coolers. Air receivers shall be provided to balance supply and demand and to provide an operating reserve. Air dryers shall be provided.

Noise from compressed air plant shall be limited as specified.

### **D6.2 Air intakes**

Air intakes shall be positioned to avoid collection of contaminants including engine exhaust fumes and excessive dust, and away from any extractor fan discharge points.

Air may be admitted through an external wall or via an intake duct to the room which houses the compressors.

Louvered panels and primary filters shall be installed at the air inlet. Filters shall comprise removable panels with frame-mounted elements. The elements shall be washable, and a spare set shall be provided.

Intake ducting shall be galvanised steel and sized to minimise pressure drop and vibration. If needed to suppress low-frequency noise, a silencer of the multiple-aerofoil or beam-splitter type shall be installed within the duct, close to the inlet point.

If air is drawn by the compressors directly from the room, appropriate provision shall be made to protect equipment and pipework from ambient temperatures.

If air is drawn from outside the building, heat from the machines shall be dissipated effectively at times of high ambient temperatures. The compressor room shall be properly ventilated.

### **D6.3 Reciprocating compressors**

Compressors shall be of the reciprocating oil-lubricated type shall be used

Each compressor shall be rated for continuous operation at twice the maximum air demand, or to recharge the receiver from empty in one hour, whichever is greater. They shall be suitable for intermittent operation and shall maintain the associated air receiver pressure between pre-set limits irrespective of actual air demand up to the maximum demand.

Cylinder heads shall be readily removable for inspection.

Each compressor shall be driven via a V-belt drive by a cage induction motor, rated to allow the compressor to operate at the safety valve setting without overloading. The compressor and motor shall be mounted on a combination baseplate, with slide rails for belt tension adjustment. A sheet-steel belt-guard shall be bolted to the base plate.

Where necessary, compressors shall have an automatic solenoid-operated unloading system to facilitate starting. This system shall be initiated by auxiliary contacts on the compressor motor starter, and shall be subject to an adjustable time delay.

Oil-lubricated machines shall have an automatic oil lubricator, fitted with indication of oil level and feed rate. The delivery side of each machine shall have an oil-eliminating filter with provision for draining into a portable container.

Each compressor shall have an inlet air filter and silencer, a pressure-relief safety valve, fusible plug, check valve and isolating valve.

Compressors shall be tested in accordance with BS1571 Part 2 .

Safety valves shall comply with BS6759 Part 2. The installation of safety valves, gauges and fusible plugs shall comply with BS1123 Part 1.

### **D6.4 After-coolers**

Compressed air plant shall incorporate after-cooling.

Unless otherwise specified, a single after-cooler with isolating and bypass arrangement shall be provided for all applications.

After-coolers shall either be of the air-cooled type with finned-tubes and electrically driven cooling fan, or water-cooled shell-and-tube heat exchanger type. Materials in contact with cooling water shall be resistant to corrosion.

All heat exchange surfaces shall be accessible for cleaning.

Generally, the air outlet temperature shall approach the cooling medium temperature to within 10 deg. C at maximum air throughput or as otherwise specified.

**D6.5 Air receivers**

Air receivers shall be installed where needed to balance a variable rate of air consumption with a fixed rate of supply. The capacity shall be enough to limit the number of compressor starts to no more than 10 per hour.

Air receivers shall be of welded-steel construction to BS5169, with a corrosion allowance of 2 mm, and may be either vertically or horizontally mounted. The vessels shall have suitable supporting feet or cradles.

Fittings shall include a pressure gauge, pressure safety valve, automatic drain valve with isolating valve and separate manual drain valve. The drain connections shall discharge to an approved point.

Safety valves shall comply with BS6759 Part 2. The installation of safety valves, gauges and fusible plugs shall comply with BS1123 Part 1.

Pressure switches with volt-free contacts shall be installed on the receiver to control the associated compressors and initiate a low pressure alarm. The control relays shall normally be mounted in the same panel as the compressor motor starters. Both the cut-in and cut-out pressure settings of the standby machine(s) shall be set lower than the corresponding settings of the duty machine(s).

**D6.6 Air dryers**

Air dryers shall be of the automatic twin cell desiccant type designed to produce an outlet dew point better than -40 deg. C.

Dryers shall be of the wall-mounting type, with twin carbon steel adsorber vessels packed with silica gel beads.

Vessels shall each have an electric immersion heater designed for a 415 V a.c. supply, unless otherwise specified. Air inlet and outlet connections, and drying media filling and emptying pads shall be provided.

Dryers shall incorporate an automatic adsorber changeover and reactivation system comprising solenoid-operated valves and a control panel. Air for reactivation shall be taken from the dry air outlet side, and passed through the absorber to be reactivated at a rate controlled by an orifice plate.

Dryers shall be thermally insulated, and clad with aluminium sheet.

Each adsorber shall be sized for 8 hours drying duty when operating at pressures between 4.5 and 7 bar g. The reactivation cycle shall include a period of air purge with the heater deactivated, to cool the reactivated adsorber to operating temperature prior to changeover.

The control panel shall incorporate the following features:

- (a) Isolating switch for 415 V a.c. supply.
- (b) Circuit protection.
- (c) Cycle timer.



- (d) Heating timer.
- (e) Heater contactors.
- (f) Control relays.
- (g) Control transformer.
- (h) Indicator lamps for CELL No 1 DUTY, CELL No 2 DUTY, HEATER No 1 ON, HEATER No 2 ON.
- (i) Indicator lamp for DRYER FAULT, volt-free contacts for remote transmission of fault, and RESET push-button.
- (j) LAMP TEST push-button.

#### **D6.7 Air pipe work**

Pipework up to and including 50 mm N.B. shall be in steel to BS1387, with heavy fittings in malleable iron to BS143 screwed to BS21. Threaded joints shall be made with a temperature resistant jointing compound. PTFE tape shall not be used.

Pipework over 50 mm N.B. shall be in steel with flanged joints, designed to the appropriate pressure rating.

Steel pipework shall be hot dip galvanised in accordance with Part 3 of the Specification. No other internal coating is required.

Instrument air pipework and fittings from the off-take point on the air supply main onwards shall comply with the Particular part of the Specification.

Pipework shall be arranged to minimise transmission of vibration. Where necessary, connections shall be made with anti-vibration couplings.

Where condensation is likely to accumulate, such as following compression or cooling of ambient air, or discharge of reactivation air from dryers, the accumulation of moisture shall be minimised. Appropriate traps and automatic drain valves discharging to approved points shall be installed.

Thermal insulation and cladding shall be arranged to provide access to valves and other components for maintenance.

#### **D6.8 Air isolating valves**

Air isolating valves shall be generally of the cast iron gate type to BS5150 or butterfly type to BS5155.

Air isolating valves up to 50 mm N.B. may be in copper alloy to BS5154 where compatible with the required temperature and pressure rating.

Isolating valves shall be tested in accordance with BS5146: Part 2.

## **D7.0 FANS**

### **D7.1 General**

Unless otherwise indicated, the requirements of this Section shall not apply to individual fans having a duty air flow rate of 0.7m<sup>3</sup>/s or less.

The make and type of fan shall be subject to approval.

Fans shall be type-tested in accordance with the requirements of BS 848 and shall be selected to give the air flow rate and sound power level specified.

Fans shall be built to a fully-developed design and shall be capable of withstanding the pressures and stresses developed during continuous operation at the selected duty. Belt-driven fans shall be capable of running continuously at ten per cent in excess of the selected duty speed.

Values of the resistance to air flow of items of equipment, ductwork and the total distribution system, where indicated in the contract documents, are approximate. The Contractor shall verify these values based on the equipment offered, and provide fans capable of delivering the required air volume when operating against the actual total system resistance.

Where fans are supplied with noise attenuators, full details shall be provided.

Fan drives shall be as detailed elsewhere in this Specification.

Fans shall be installed using bolts, nuts and washers with all 'as-cast' bearing surfaces for bolt heads and washers counterfaced. Holding-down bolts for fans and motors shall be provided with means to prevent the bolts turning when the nuts are tightened. Anti-vibration mountings shall be as detailed elsewhere in the Specification. Fans heavier than 20kg shall be provided with eyebolts or other purpose-made lifting facilities.

Where specified, or as necessary, fans shall be fitted with variable inlet vanes which shall be matched to fan performance to give stable control. Vanes shall be interlocked to ensure movement in unison. Operation shall be manual or automatic as specified. Where manual control is specified, the operating device shall facilitate positive locking in at least five different positions.

Vane blades shall not vibrate or flutter in any possible operating condition, and the construction of the linkage system shall minimise friction and lost motion.

Unless otherwise specified, the shaft and impeller assembly of all fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced. All propeller fans shall be statically and dynamically balanced where the impeller diameter is 750mm or greater. Where indicated, limits of vibration severity shall be in accordance with BS 4675: Part 1.

Fan bearings shall be suitable for the installed attitude of the fan. They shall be grease/oil ball and/or roller type or oil-lubricated sleeve type. All bearing housings shall be precision-located and arranged so that bearings may be replaced without the need for realignment. Bearing housings shall be protected against the ingress of dust and, where fitted with greasing points, they shall be designed to prevent damage from over-greasing. For grease-lubricated systems,

the bearings shall be provided initially with grease recommended by the bearing manufacturer. For oil-lubricated systems, the housings shall provide an adequate reservoir of oil and shall include a filling plug and be oil-tight and dust-proof. Systems other than total-loss types shall include an accessible drain plug. All bearing lubricators shall be located to facilitate maintenance.

## **D7.2 Ceiling fans**

Ceiling fans shall comply with BS 4934 for safety and BS 5060 for performance.

Fans shall be speed-controlled in at least five discrete steps, using a separate surface-mounted controller. The controller shall use a tapped auto-transformer for speed control.

Motors shall be capacitor start/run type, with inner wound stator and rotating outer body and incorporating ball-type bearings .

Motors shall be suitable for use in a tropical environment.

## **D7.3 Centrifugal fans**

Centrifugal fans for high-velocity high-pressure systems (defined within the HVCA Specification DW/141) shall be backward-bladed type.

Unless otherwise specified, centrifugal fans of more than 7.5kW at the fan shaft shall be of the backward-bladed type having a fan total efficiency not less than 75%.

Fan casings shall be built to allow withdrawal of the impeller after installation. Fans other than those in air-handling units shall be provided with flanged outlet connections and spigoted inlet connections unless otherwise specified, except that, for negative pressures greater than 500Pa, inlet connections shall be flanged. A plugged drain point shall be fitted at the lowest point in fan casings. Permanent indication shall be provided showing the direction of rotation of the fan impeller. Fan casings shall be provided with removable access panels incorporating purpose-made air seals. The sizes of access panels shall facilitate cleaning and maintenance.

Impellers shall be of mild steel or aluminium alloy, of riveted, welded or other approved construction, with spiders or hubs of robust design.

## **D7.4 Axial-flow fans**

Axial-flow fan casings shall be rigidly constructed of mild steel or aluminium alloy, stiffened and braced where necessary. Mounting feet shall be provided where necessary for bolting to a base or to supports. Inlet and outlet ducts shall terminate in flanges to facilitate removal. For in-duct mounting fans, the length of the fan casing shall be greater than the combined length of the impeller(s) and motor(s) and electrical connections to the motors shall be through an external terminal box secured to the casing.

Impellers shall be of steel, aluminium or plastics and the blades shall be secured to the hub or

the blades and the hub shall be formed in one piece. The hub shall be keyed to the shaft. Blades shall be aerofoil or laminar section, capable of pitch adjustment where specified.

For axial-flow fans driven by motors external to the fan casing, the requirements for drives and guards mentioned elsewhere in this Specification shall be met. Unless otherwise indicated, a guard is not required for any part of a drive which is inside the fan casing. An access panel with purpose-made air seals shall be provided in the fan casing. The access panel shall be sized to facilitate maintenance.

Where axial-flow fans of the bifurcated type are specified, the motors shall be out of the air stream. Motors may be placed between the two halves of the casing in the external air or may be placed within the fan casing, provided that effective ventilation is given to the motors.

#### **D7.5 Propeller fans**

Propeller fans shall be ring-mounted or diaphragm-mounted as specified. Impellers shall be of steel, aluminium, or plastics. Blades shall be securely attached to the hub, or the blades and hub shall be formed in one piece.

#### **D7.6 In-line centrifugal and mixed-flow fans**

Mixed-flow fan casings shall be rigidly constructed of mild steel, or aluminium alloy stiffened and braced where necessary. Mounting feet shall be provided where necessary for bolting to a base or supports. Inlet and outlet shall terminate in flanges to facilitate removal. Stator vanes shall be of mild steel or aluminium alloy. The design shall

facilitate access to the impeller. Where motors are mounted external to the casing, the requirements for drives and guards given elsewhere in this Specification shall be met. An access panel with purpose-made air seal shall be provided in the fan casing. The access panel shall facilitate maintenance.

#### **D7.7 Mechanical roof-extract units**

The fans used in roof extract units shall meet the appropriate requirements of the preceding clauses relating to fans generally and to particular types of fans. Cowls and bases shall be of materials which are resistant to the weather and solar radiation, and are appropriate to the location of the fan. Casings shall be formed to facilitate a weatherproof fitting to the building structure. Adequate access to electrical supply terminals and lubrication points shall be provided by means of hinged cowls or otherwise as appropriate. Back-draught dampers or fire-release dampers shall be provided where specified. Bird guards of not greater than 25mm mesh shall be provided as an integral part of the unit.

#### **D7.8 Protectively-coated fans and fans for corrosive or hazardous applications**

Where fans are required to handle toxic, corrosive, flammable, explosive or high-temperature gases, the materials of construction shall be chosen appropriately, and all relevant safety regulations shall apply. Bearings and lubrication arrangements shall be suitable for the

conditions. Protectively-coated fans shall meet the appropriate requirements of the preceding clauses relating to fans generally and to particular types of fans, and the form of protection shall be as indicated. Where a protective coating is required for use with corrosive gases the coating shall cover all parts of the complete fan, motor and casing assembly which will be affected. No fan shall be installed if the protective coating has been damaged. Impellers shall be of coated steel, stainless steel, aluminium or plastics as specified.

For fans are installed in hazardous atmospheres, requirements shall be as specified.

## **D7.9 Air filters**

Filters shall be complete with robust purpose-made holding frames which shall not distort in operation. Filters shall be arranged to facilitate access for cleaning, removal and refitting. Purpose-made seals shall be provided to minimise air leakage around filters and the effectiveness of the seals shall not be impaired by periodic removal and refitting of the filter cells.

Where a flame-proof filter medium is required, the material shall comply with the requirements of BS 476.

The design air velocity at the face of the filters shall not exceed 2.5m/s. At the design air-volume flow rate the initial (clean) resistance shall not exceed 90Pa for filters.

Enough spare filter elements shall be provided to replace the complete filter bank.

Unless otherwise indicated, filters shall be selected from the following range of preferred nominal sizes:

- (a) 600mm x 600mm;
- (b) 500mm x 500mm.

## **D8.0 MISCELLANEOUS ITEMS**

### **D8.1 Automatic in-line strainers**

In-line strainers shall be totally-encased, self-cleaning, metallic-element filters suitable for installation in and forming part of the pipework system. They shall be capable of removing all waterborne debris which may reasonably be expected to pass through a 25mm-spaced coarse bar screen.

The strainer body shall be manufactured and designed as a pressure vessel. If fabricated, it shall be designed in accordance with the relevant sections of BS 5500 except for inspection and witness of testing which shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to arrange.

As a minimum, the strainer body shall contain:

- (i) Removable man-way cover allowing inspection and maintenance of the strainer elements and cleaning mechanism. The man-way cover shall be easily re-mountable and incorporate lifting eyes or similar to facilitate handling with an overhead crane.

- (ii) Inlet and outlet branches rated and sized to suit the pipework system in which it is installed without necessitating a change in pipe diameter.
- (iii) Air vent valve.
- (iv) Drainage valves and pipework necessary to route drainage water into the building drainage system.
- (v) Pressure differential switch to give adjustable settings for strainer stop/start control and high differential pressure alarm and reset.

The strainer element and associated brackets, fixings and screws shall be of a non-corrodible material equal to or better than 316 S16 (EN58J) stainless steel. The elements shall be readily removable from the strainer and designed to withstand a differential pressure equal to the maximum generated head within the pipe system.

The backwash mechanism shall be held within water-lubricated bearings which shall be arranged to prevent the ingress of sand. The mechanism shall be electrically-driven from an IP55, 415V, 3-phase motor via a suitably-rated gear box and shear pin or similar device to prevent damage occurring due to the backwash device 'jamming'. The drive shall be arranged by means of a cam and micro switch on the main drive shaft to 'park' at an unperforated section of the screen in order to reduce the backwash flow when the screen-drive motor is not operating.

Where the operating head of the pipe system is not enough for backwashing, a single-entry close-coupled centrifugal pump and fully-submersible type motor shall be used. The pump shall have a suitable NPSHr characteristic, and be able to handle trash likely to pass a 25mm-spaced coarse bar screen.

## **D8.2 Access steelwork**

Ladders, step-irons, platforms, covers and handrails to be supplied and fixed under this Contract are generally shown on the Drawings, but the Contractor shall ensure that the Works are designed for safe operation and maintenance by providing whatever safe access arrangements are needed.

Any small areas of chequer plating or similar coverings that are needed to cover gaps between items of Plant and the surrounding structure, and any access ladders, platforms and handrails that need to be attached to items of Plant to facilitate operation, inspection or maintenance, shall be supplied and erected by the Contractor.

The Contractor shall also supply and erect adequate access to all handwheels, sight glasses, gauges, lubrication points and any other items to which access is necessary for routine maintenance.

Handrails shall consist of double-ball forged-steel standards with tubular rails, hot-dip galvanised in accordance with BS 729.

Chequer plating shall be of 'Durbar' or other non-slip pattern, not less than 4.5mm thick (exclusive of pattern) and hot-dip galvanised after fabrication in accordance with BS 729.

Aluminium alloy flooring may be used instead of chequer plating. It shall comply with BS 1470 material H 30 TB.

## **D8.3 Hand railing**

Handrailing shall be double-rail, 1100mm high. On stairways, it shall be not less than 900mm high above the stairs measured vertically from the nose of the tread.

Standards shall be 38mm diameter solid forged-steel to BS 4360 Grade 43A with 60mm diameter solid-forged steel balls at handrail locating points, drilled to give 1.5mm clearance to handrails. Each ball shall incorporate a concealed grub-screw with Allen-type head to secure the rail. Standards shall have a minimum base width of 65mm, drilled for M16 fixing bolts and be set at maximum 1800mm centres.

Handrails shall be 33.7mm external diameter, 3.2mm thick tubular steel to BS 1775 Grade 13. Joints shall be arranged to coincide with the spacing of standards where possible otherwise they shall have butt joints with a tubular steel ferrule, plug-welded or fixed with a 5mm diameter countersunk head pin.

Removable sections of handrail shall have half-lap joints secured with a countersunk head pin.

Chains across openings shall be 10mm with 3 links per 100mm galvanised mild steel. The hooks and retaining eyes shall be securely fixed to the balls of the standards.

All components for handrailing shall be hot-dip galvanised after manufacture in accordance with BS 729.

#### **D8.4 Manually-raked inclined bar screens**

Screens shall have the aperture size specified, to prevent coarse debris from entering the inlets and protect the plant against mechanical damage. They shall be inclined at an angle of approximately 15 degrees from vertical to facilitate raking. Inclined length shall not exceed 2.5m

Screens shall be designed for mounting as shown on the Drawings. The design shall avoid the formation of areas of stagnation in the flow. Sealing shall be provided between the frame and the inlet channel walls.

Screens shall be designed to withstand the maximum possible pressure differential across the screen when fully blinded, without incurring any damage or overload. The working headloss across the screen at maximum flow shall not exceed 50 mm following screen cleaning. Unless otherwise specified the velocity of the flow through the screen shall not exceed 1.2 m/s.

The equipment shall be capable of operation under all duty flow variations and debris loadings, and shall be capable of withstanding the impact of large floating material and heavy objects in the flow without damage to the screen.

Screen bars shall be accurately set and secured to give the designed clearance between the bars. The bars shall extend from the sole plate, to which they shall be individually welded, to a point above maximum possible top water level, at which point they shall be individually welded to the screen top plate. Intermediate stiffening supports shall be welded to the screen bars as necessary for screens to accommodate hydraulic pressure due to depth and high flow rates through the inlet channels. The screen bars shall be individually welded to each stiffening support. Stiffening supports shall be fitted so they cannot impede raking

The sole plate shall be profiled to induce screenings and debris to be directed onto the screen bars and not to accumulate at the foot of the screen. The leading edge of the sole plate shall be level with the inlet channel invert.

The top edge of the screen shall be profiled to enable easy raking-off of screenings material.

When specified, for applications where large or heavy oversize debris may accumulate against the screen, hoisting equipment shall be provided. The screen shall then be fitted with hoist-guide pulleys, and operator access shall be provided to enable manual removal of oversize objects from the flow.

Screens shall be constructed from hot-dipped galvanised steel.

Raking shall be manual and screenings shall be transferred manually to a rakings container. The scope of supply shall include manual rakes and manually moved containers, with all accessories needed to remove the collected debris.

Rake handles shall not exceed 2.5 m long. Rake tines shall be designed to fit the screen apertures, and tines shall be of material which cannot damage the screens.

Rakings containers shall be sized so that, when fully loaded with the typical tropical organic material expected, the gross weight shall not exceed 50kg. They shall be fitted with handles to facilitate manual or mechanical handling as specified.

Where needed, means shall be provided for safe man-access to a raking platform which shall be provided along the whole width of the screens, above the screen top edge. Access shall be by ladder with handrail. Safety handrailing shall be provided along the whole length of the platform, which may be designed as partly-removable during raking. Secure anchorages at suitable intervals shall be provided for operatives safety harness, using hook-on arrangements.

#### **D8.5 Surge analysis and report**

Where specified, the Contractor shall make a surge analysis for pumping systems and report the results to the Engineer. Analysis of the performance of the pumping station and its associated delivery pipeline shall be included.

The analysis shall determine the magnitude of surge pressures in the pumping mains under normal operation and under power failure, with all possible combinations of plant operating.

On completion of the surge analysis, a report shall be drafted and 3 copies shall be submitted to the Engineer.

The report shall include the following:

- (a) A short introduction, describing the scope of work done and the method used for analysis.
- (b) A summary of all the results.
- (c) A description of the system studied, detailing the hydraulic components and any assumptions made.
- (d) The basic equations that have been used.
- (e) An engineering discussion of the system design and operation, including operation before and after installation of the surge protection measures recommended.
- (f) System characteristics and determination of steady flowrates for the full range of operating conditions.
- (g) A detailed explanation of the engineering significance of all computer results of transient simulations.
- (h) Selected pressure and flow graphs at important locations along the mains, plus an envelope of maximum and minimum pressure vs distance for each transient simulation.
- (i) Detailed observations and conclusions.
- (j) A brief assessment of the suitability of the following surge suppression devices:
  - (i) Surge vessels



- (ii) Air valves
- (iii) Closing-speed control of non-return valves
- (iv) Feed tanks
- (k) Calibration and verification of which methods of suppression would be acceptable.
- (l) Final recommendation of surge suppression equipment proposed, with preliminary drawings and specifications

The surge analysis report shall be submitted to the Engineer within 3 months of the date of starting the Contract.

When the Contractor is notified of acceptance of the report, detailed specifications and installation drawings for the surge pressure control equipment shall be submitted to the Engineer within six weeks.

The surge suppression devices shall be installed with the main equipment.

When the system has been installed, the Contractor shall take measurements to verify correct performance at different operating conditions.

If the performance proves inadequate, the Contractor shall at his own cost make any modifications needed to keep system maximum and minimum pressures within acceptable limits.

## **D8.6 Stoplogs**

Unless otherwise specified, stoplogs shall be corrosion-protected mild steel. They shall be strong enough to withstand the maximum water pressure which could be applied to them in service without distortion causing any leakage.

Stoplog slots to be provided in structures shall be fitted with channel-section inserts, built-in to the structure during construction. Materials used for the inserts shall be corrosion resistant and designed for long life in installed conditions at site. The slot inserts shall be designed to ensure effective sealing with stoplogs.

Stoplogs shall be fitted with suitably durable sealing arrangements, designed for long life when kept in the storage provided, and designed to ensure minimal leakage between adjacent stoplogs and the stoplog slot inserts when in position. The side seals, bearing against the fixed slot inserts, shall be low-friction type, to minimise the lifting force needed. Rubber seals shall not be used.

Hardened steel lifting pins or eyes, designed for use with the stoplog hoist and lifting beam, shall be incorporated with each stoplog.

### **D8.6.1 Stoplog lifting beam**

Stoplog lifting beams shall be designed to couple and uncouple automatically in service when lifting and lowering stoplogs, and shall fit in the stoplog slots to facilitate operation.

Beams shall be of galvanised steel, with self-lubricating bronze bushes at bearing points.

Beams shall be provided with permanently attached steel-wire slings for lifting with the hoist lifting hook

**D8.6.2 Stoplog hoist and monorail**

Unless otherwise specified, stoplog hoists shall be manual wire-rope hoists, designed for operation using an endless chain by one man.

Stoplog hoists shall run on overhead monorails leading from each stoplog slot to the position for stoplog storage to be provided. The hoist hook shall incorporate a safety catch to facilitate safe operation.

Hoists shall be provided with enough lifting cable to enable stoplogs to be positioned at the bottom of the lowest of the stoplog slots provided.

The complete lifting system including monorail, hoist, slings, lifting beam and stoplog pins shall be strong enough to lift the weight of one stoplog and overcome the friction in the stoplog slots when the stoplog is fully loaded by water pressure up to the top of the stoplog, with a design safety factor of not less than 2

**D8.6.3 Stoplog storage**

Stoplog storage shall be in corrosion-protected steel racks, designed to accommodate stoplogs and lifting beam, including any spare stoplogs provided.

## **PART F - ELECTRICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

## **PART F – ELECTRICAL STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

### **F1.0 GENERAL**

#### **F1.1 Regulations and Standards**

The electrical installation shall comply with all relevant statutory regulations and standards current at date of tender, unless otherwise indicated within this Specification. In general, the following shall apply:-

- (a) Indian Electricity Act and rules thereof;
- (b) National Electrical Codes of Practice;
- (c) Fire Insurance regulations;
- (d) Rules laid down by the Chief Electrical Inspector of the State;
- (e) Any other regulations laid down by local authorities;
- (f) International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC), British Standard, European Standard or CENELEC Harmonised Standards.

If no standard is specified, the relevant Indian Standard or, in the absence of such standard, international standard shall apply.

#### **F1.2 Reference Standards**

Unless otherwise approved motors, transformers, generators, switchgear, control gear and associated equipment shall comply with the relevant IEC, ISO, PD, HD, BS EN and BIS Standards. The standards associated with the electrical installation and building services shall be in accordance with the relevant Indian Standards and regulations.

Reference is made in this section to the Standards listed below.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS 21:1985	Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions).
BS 159:1992	Specification for high-voltage busbars and busbar connections.
IEC 60076	Specification for power transformers.
BS 921:1976	Specification. Rubber mats for electrical purposes.
BS 1363-2:1995	13 A plugs, socket-outlets and adaptors. Specification for 13 A switched and unswitched socket-outlets.
BS 1363-3:1989	13 A plugs, socket-outlets and adaptors. Specification for adaptors.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS 1486-1:1959	Lubricating nipples. Lubricating nipples and adaptors for use on machinery and vehicles.
BS 1853-2:1995	Tubular fluorescent lamps for general lighting service. Specification for lamps used in the United Kingdom not included in BS EN 60081, BS EN 60901, BS EN 61195 and BS EN 61199. (Relevant IS reference is mentioned elsewhere).
BS 2484:1985	Specification for straight concrete and clayware cable covers.
BS 2562:1979	Specification for cable boxes for transformers and reactors.
BS 2569-2:1965	Specification for sprayed metal coatings. Protection of iron and steel against corrosion and oxidation at elevated temperatures.
BS 2692-2:1956	Fuses for voltages exceeding 1000 V A.C. Expulsion fuses.
BS 2869:1998	Specification for fuel oils for agricultural, domestic and industrial engines and boilers.
BS 3573:1990	Specification for polyolefin copper-conductor telecommunication cables.
BS 3924:1978	Specification for pressure-sensitive adhesive tapes for electrical insulating purposes.
BS 4444:1989	Guide to electrical earth monitoring and protective conductor proving.
BS 4504-3.3:1989	Circular flanges for pipes, valves and fittings (PN designated). Specification for copper alloy and composite flanges.
BS 4533-102.1:1990	Luminaires. Particular requirements. Specification for fixed general purpose luminaires.
BS 4568-1:1970	Specification for steel conduit and fittings with metric threads of ISO form for electrical installations. Steel conduit, bends and couplers.
BS 4607-1:1984	Non-metallic conduits and fittings for electrical installations. Specification for fittings and components of insulating material.
BS 4678-1:1971	Cable trunking. Steel surface trunking.
BS 4678-4:1982	Cable trunking. Specification for cable trunking made of insulating material.
BS 4999-111:1987	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for built-in thermal protection for electric motors rated at 660 Volts A.C and below.
BS 4999-140:1987	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for voltage regulation and parallel operation of A.C synchronous generators.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS 4999-141:2004	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for Standard Dimensions.
BS 4999-142:1987	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for mechanical performance: Vibration.
BS 4999-145:1987	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for winding terminations.
BS 5000-3:2006	Specification for rotating electrical machines of particular types or for particular applications. Generators to be driven by reciprocating internal combustion engines.
BS 5308-1:1986	Instrumentation cables. Specification for polyethylene insulated cables.
BS 5308-2:1986	Instrumentation cables. Specification for PVC insulated cables.
BS 5372:1997	Specification for dimensions of cable terminations for multi-core extruded solid dielectric insulated distribution cables of rated voltages 600/1000 V and 1900/3300 V having copper or aluminium conductors.
BS 5467:1997	Specification for 600/1000 V and 1900/3300 V armoured electric cable having thermosetting insulation.
BS 5499-5:2002	Graphical symbols and signs. Safety signs, including fire safety signs. Signs with specific safety meanings.
BS 5649-2:1978	Lighting columns. Dimensions and tolerances.
BS 5685-5:1987	Electricity meters. Specification for input and output switching or logic arrangements for multi-rate registers for electricity meters.
BS 5685-8:1991	Electricity meters. Specification for input and output switching or logic arrangements for multi-rate registers for electricity meters.
BS 6004:2000	Electric cables. PVC insulated, non-armoured cables for voltages up to and including 450/750 V, for electric power, lighting and internal wiring.
BS 6031:1981	Code of practice for earthworks.
BS 6121-1:1989	Mechanical cable glands. Specification for metallic glands.
BS 6121-2:1989	Mechanical cable glands. Specification for polymeric glands.
BS 6207-3:2001	Mineral insulated cables with a rated voltage not exceeding 750 V. Guide to use.
BS 6231:1998	Specification for PVC-insulated cables for switchgear and controlgear wiring.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS 6346:1997	Specification for 600/1000 V and 1900/3300 V armoured electric cables having PVC insulation.
BS 6360:1991	Specification for conductors in insulated cables and cords.
BS 6435:1984	Specification for unfilled enclosures for the dry termination of HV cables for transformers and reactors.
BS 6622:2007	Electric Cables. Armoured cables with thermosetting insulation for rated voltages from 3.8/6.6 kV up to 19/33 kV. Requirements and test methods
BS 6651:1999	Code of practice for protection of structures against lightning.
BS 6724:1997	Specification for 600/1000 V and 1900/3300 V armoured electric cables having thermosetting insulation and low emission of smoke and corrosive gases when affected by fire.
BS 6739:1986	Code of practice for instrumentation in process control systems: installation design and practice.
BS 6910-1:1988	Cold pour resin compound and heat-shrink cable joints in the voltage range up to 1000 V A.C and 1500 V D.C. Specification for materials.
BS 7194:1990	Specification for direct-current and low-frequency electronic measuring instruments with a digital display.
BS 7211:1998	Electric cables. Thermosetting insulated, non-armoured cables for voltages up to and including 450/750 V, for electric power, lighting and internal wiring, and having low emission of smoke and corrosive gases when affected by fire.
BS 7430:1998	Code of practice for earthing.
BS 7671:2008	Requirements for electrical installations. IEE Wiring Regulations.
BS EN 10217-3:2002	Welded steel tubes for pressure purposes. Technical delivery conditions. Alloy fine grain steel tubes.
BS EN 50014:1998	Electrical apparatus for potentially explosive atmospheres. General requirements.
BS EN 50086-1:1994	Specification for conduit systems for cable management. General requirements.
BS EN 50086-2-1:1996	Specification for conduit systems for cable management. Particular requirements. Rigid conduit systems.
BS EN 50091-1:1997	General and safety requirements for UPS used in operator access area.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS EN 50091-1-2:1996	Specification for UPS, EMC requirements.
BS EN 50262:1999	Metric cable glands for electrical installations.
BS EN 60034-1:2004	Rotating electrical machines. Rating and performance.
BS EN 60034-8:2007	Rotating electrical machines. Terminal markings and direction of rotation.
BS EN 60034-12:2002	Rotating electrical machines. Starting performance of single-speed three-phase cage induction motors.
BS EN 60044-1:1999	Instrument transformers. Current transformers.
BS EN 60044-2:1999	Instrument transformers. Inductive voltage transformers.
BS EN 60061-1:1997	Specification for lamp caps and holders together with gauges for the control of interchangeability and safety. Lamps caps.
BS EN 60064:1995 +A4:2007	Tungsten Filament Lamps for domestic and similar general lighting purposes. Performance requirements.
BS EN 60076-1:1997	Tungsten filament lamps for domestic and similar general lighting purposes. Performance requirements.
BS EN 60129:1994	Specification for alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches.
BS EN 60214-1:2003	Tap Changers. Performance requirements and tests methods.
BS EN 60282-1:2006	High-voltage fuses. Current-limiting fuses.
BS EN 62271-200:2004	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear. A.C. metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV.
BS EN 60432-1:2000	Safety specification for incandescent lamps. Tungsten filament lamps for domestic and similar general lighting purposes.
BS EN 60439-1:1999	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies. Specification for type-tested and partially type-tested assemblies.
BS EN 60529:1992	Specification for degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code).
BS EN 60598-1:2000	Luminaires. General requirements and tests.
BS EN 60669-1:2000	Switches for household and similar fixed electrical installations. General requirements.
BS EN 60742:1996	Isolating transformers and safety isolating transformers. Requirements.



<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
BS EN 60836:2005	Specifications for unused silicone insulating liquids for electrotechnical purposes
BS EN 60898-2:2006	Circuit-breakers for overcurrent protection for household and similar installations. Circuit-breakers for A.C. and D.C Operation.
BS EN 60903:2003	Live working. Gloves of insulating material.
BS EN 60947-5-1:2004	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Control circuit devices and switching elements. Electromechanical control circuit devices.
BS EN 61000-6-4:2001	Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). General standards. Emission standard for industrial environments.
BS EN 61008-1:2004	Specification for residual current operated circuit-breakers without integral overcurrent protection for household and similar uses (RCCBs). General rules.
BS EN 61008-2-1:1995	Specification for residual current operated circuit-breakers without integral overcurrent protection for household and similar uses (RCCBs). Applicability of the general rules to RCCBs functionally independent of line voltage.
BS EN 62053-21:2003	Electricity metering equipment (AC) Particular requirements. Static meters for active (Class 1 & 2).
BS EN 62271-100:2001	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear. High-voltage alternating-current circuit-breakers.
BS EN 62271-102:2001	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear. High-voltage alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches.
IEC 60034-5:2000	Rotating electrical machines. Degrees of protection provided by the integral design of rotating electrical machines (IP code). Classification.
IEC 60034-6:1991	Rotating electrical machines. Method of cooling (IC code).
IEC 60034-9:1997	Rotating electrical machines. Noise limits.
IEC 60051-1:1997	Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories. Definitions and general requirements common to all parts.
IEC 60073:2002	Basic and safety principles for man-machine interface, marking and identification. Coding principles for indicators and actuators.
IEC 60085:2004	Method for determining the thermal Classification of electrical insulation.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
IEC 60136:1986	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for dimensions of brushes and brush holders for electrical machinery.
IEC 60137:2003	Insulated bushings for alternating voltages above 1kV.
IEC 60188:2001	High pressure Mercury Vapour Lamps. Performance Specifications.
IEC 60255	Electrical Relays.
IEC 60269-1:1998	Low-voltage fuses. General requirements.
IEC 60287-1-1:2006	Electric cables - Calculation of the current rating - Part 1-1: Current rating equations (100 % load factor) and calculation of losses – General.
IEC 60404-1:2000	Magnetic Materials. Classification.
IEC 60439-1:1999	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies. Specification for type-tested and partially type-tested assemblies.
IEC 60470:2000	High-voltage alternating current contactors and contactor-based motor starters
BS EN 60076-11:2004	Dry-type power transformers.
IEC 60947-1:2007	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. General rules
IEC 60947-2:2006	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Circuit-breakers.
IEC 60947-3:1999	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units.
IEC 60947-4-1:2001	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. Electromechanical contactors and motor-starters.
IEC 60947-4-2:2000	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. A.C. semiconductor motor controllers and starters.
IEC 60947-4-3:2000	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. Contactors and motor-starters. AC semiconductor controllers and contactors for non-motor loads.
IEC 60947-7-1:2002	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Ancillary equipment. Terminal blocks for copper conductors.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
IEC 61000	Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC).
IS 732:1989	Code of Practice for Electrical Wiring Installations.
IS 2309:1989	Protection of Buildings and Allied Structures Against Lightning - Code of Practice.
IS 2418:Part1:1977	Specification for Tubular Fluorescent Lamps for Lighting Services-Part1:Requirement & Tests.
IS 3043:1987	Code of Practice for Earthing.
IS 3231	Specification for Electrical Relays for Power System Protection.
IS 3854:1997	Switches for Domestic and Similar Purposes - Specification.
IS 6701:1985	Specification for Tungsten Filament Miscellaneous Electric Lamps.
IS 8686:1977	Specification for Static Protection Relays.
IS 13947-2:1993	Specification for Low Voltage switchgear and Low Voltage-Part 2: Circuit Breakers.
IS/IEC 309-1:1988	Plugs, Sockets-Outlets and Couplers for Industrial Purposes-Part 1: General Requirements.
IS/IEC 309-2:1989	Plugs, Sockets-Outlets and Couplers for Industrial Purposes-Part 2:Dimension Interchangeability Requirements for Pin and Contact Tube Accessories.
ISO 1000:1992.	Specification for SI units and recommendations for the use of their multiples and of certain other units.
ISO 1461:1999	Hot dip galvanised coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles. Specifications and test methods.
ISO 2112:1990	Specification for aminoplastic moulding materials.
ISO 3046-1:2002	Reciprocating internal combustion engines. Performance. Declarations of power, fuel and lubricating oil consumptions and test methods. Additional requirements for engines for general use.
ISO 3046-4:1997	Reciprocating internal combustion engines. Performance. Speed governing.
ISO 5657:1986	Fire tests on building materials and structures. Method of measuring the ignitability of products subjected to thermal irradiance.
PD 5304:2000	The safe use of machinery.
SP 30:1985	National Electric Code.

<b>Standards</b>	<b>Subjects</b>
HD 21.1 S4:2002	Cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V and having thermoplastic insulation - Part 1: General requirements.
HD 22.1 S4:2002	Cables of rated voltages up to and including 450/750 V and having cross-linked insulation - Part 1: General requirements.

### **F1.3 Abbreviations of electrical terms**

For the purpose of this Specification, the following abbreviations of electrical terms have been used:—

R	=	red phase
Y	=	yellow phase
B	=	blue phase
N	=	neutral
ac	=	alternating current
dc	=	direct current
A	=	ampere
mA	=	milliamp
V	=	volt
kW	=	kilowatt
kWh	=	kilowatt hour
kVA <sub>r</sub>	=	kilovolt ampere reactive
kVA	=	kilovolt ampere
MVA	=	megavolt ampere
Hz	=	hertz (cycles per second)
CT	=	current transformer
SP	=	single pole
SPN	=	single pole and neutral
DP	=	double pole
TP	=	triple pole
TPN	=	triple pole and neutral
SPSwN	=	single pole and switched neutral
TPSwN	=	triple pole and switched neutral
LSF	=	low smoke and fumes
MCB	=	miniature circuit breaker
MCCB	=	moulded-case circuit breaker
RCD	=	residual current device
MCC	=	motor control centre

### **F1.4 Polarity**

All cables shall be so connected between main switchboards, distribution boards, plant and accessories so that the correct sequence of phase rotation is preserved throughout the system.

All non-flexible cable cores shall be identified with phase colours for three-wire and four-wire circuits. Single-phase circuits shall be red and black.

Where more than one phase is incorporated on a common system in one room, the live cores shall be red, yellow, or blue as appropriate. All fittings and switch accessories shall be permanently labelled and segregated.

Harmonised systems of phase layouts on plant and equipment, of cable and plant phase identification, and of cable core insulation colouring shall be used throughout the Works.

### **F1.5 Voltage and frequency**

Unless otherwise specified, all apparatus and wiring shall be suitable for use with a three-phase, four-wire, 240/415 volt, 50Hz solidly-earthed neutral supply having a nominal sinusoidal waveform.

Supplies for circuit-breaker control, circuit-breaker spring-charging motors, protection relay, tripping coil, closing coil, alarm and indication functions shall, unless otherwise specified, be 110V dc for high voltage switchgear.

Supplies for incomer and bus section circuit-breaker control, tripping coil, closing coil, alarm and indication functions shall, unless otherwise specified, be 48V dc for low voltage switchboard.

Supplies for transformer tap-changing motors and switchboard anti-condensation heaters shall, unless otherwise specified, be 240V ac.

Supplies for low voltage motor-starter control circuits, contactor coils and relays shall, unless otherwise specified, be 240V ac.

Supplies for high voltage motor-starter control circuits, contactor coils and relays shall, unless otherwise specified, be 110V dc.

Supplies for interposing relays between programmable electronic devices and other equipment shall, unless otherwise specified, be 24V dc.

During construction and installation of the Works, all portable electric tools shall operate from 240V ac. supply. The supply transformer shall be of the double-wound type with an earthed interwinding screen. The transformer secondary winding shall have an earthed centre tap.

### **F1.6 Units of measurement**

All information shall be in SI units in accordance with ISO 1000:1992. Where plant designs exist in Imperial units, the dimensions and tolerances of layouts and terminal points shall be presented in SI units to a degree of accuracy which permits the precise matching of existing components.

## **F1.7 Electricity supplies**

Not less than two months prior to the power supply being required, the Contractor shall arrange for the electricity supply authority to undertake any testing and inspection necessary for the electricity supplies to be connected when required. On completion of the tests and inspections, the Contractor shall supply to the Engineer a copy of his Electrical Installation Completion Certificate and of the electricity supply authority's test certificates.

## **F1.8 Electrical safety**

The Contractor shall be responsible for the electrical safety of all equipment supplied and installed. Whilst any equipment is being installed or tested, the Contractor shall ensure that all necessary precautions are taken to safeguard personnel working on Site. If necessary, this shall include fencing off areas in which a risk is considered likely to exist, and erecting warning notices.

The Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that the electrical installation is carried out by competent personnel and that the work is carried out in accordance with standard procedures and test requirements. Before any piece of apparatus is energised, it shall be thoroughly examined to ensure that it is free of dirt, water, vermin or other foreign matter.

## **F2.0 ELECTRICAL MOTORS**

### **F2.1 Motors**

#### **F2.1.1 Type**

Motors shall be of the ac cage or wound-rotor induction type as specified.

Energy-efficient type motors shall be provided. They shall have minimum efficiencies at rated output, and maximum ranges of efficiency between half- and full-rated output, which meet the following requirements:

<b>Motor rated output (kW)</b>	<b>Minimum efficiency at rated output (%)</b>	<b>Maximum efficiency range half to full-rated output (%)</b>
250 and above	96	1.5
132 up to 249	95	2.0
55 up to 131	94	2.0
Below 55	92	2.0

#### **F2.1.2 Rating and duty**

Motors shall comply with the general requirements for rating and performance as stipulated in BS EN 60034-1:2004 except where amended below. Unless otherwise specified, motors shall be suitable for continuous operation at rated output at any voltage between 94% and 106% and any frequency between 95% and 102% of rated values.

Motors for use with variable-frequency converter-type speed controllers shall be rated for continuous running duty over the specified speed range. The motor design shall take in to

account:

- increased heating, vibration and noise arising from a non-sinusoidal supply voltage waveform;
- reduced cooling when operating at lower than rated speed;
- bearing life, lubrication, radial forces and critical speeds when operated at speeds in excess of rated speed.

### **F2.1.3 Starting**

Unless otherwise specified, cage induction motors shall be full or reduced voltage direct-on-line or star-delta started and wound-rotor induction motors shall be rotor-resistance started.

Unless otherwise specified, the starting performance of cage induction motors shall comply with BS EN 60034-12:2002 design 'N', 'NY' or 'D' as appropriate for the starting method specified. The minimum voltage at the motor terminals shall be assumed to be a constant value of 85% of rated voltage during the acceleration period.

Locked rotor current of the motor shall not exceed 600% of the full load current.

The frequency of starting for wound-rotor type motors shall be as specified to suit duty requirements.

### **F2.1.4 Windings and insulation**

Winding insulation shall be Class F or better to IEC 60085:2004 and the maximum temperature shall not exceed that permitted for Class B.

Windings shall be supported, braced, wedged and blocked to provide adequate rigidity under all conditions of service. Special attention shall be given to the windings of direct-on-line started motors and the support of windings of vertical motors to prevent any permanent displacement during the service life. The coil overhang of rotor windings shall be tension banded.

Cage-type rotors shall be designed to provide an adequate factor of safety against mechanical failure due to fatigue during the service life of the motor. Special attention shall be given to the design of cage rotors fitted to motors which are subject to operation at speeds in excess of rated speed, and where flywheels or large inertia loads are involved.

Electrical joints and connections shall withstand the mechanical and thermal stresses under normal and abnormal operating conditions. Stator endwindings shall be blocked and braced to provide high rigidity.

Completed windings, including connections, shall be subjected to a minimum of two cycles of vacuum impregnation with solvent-free resin varnish followed by curing, so as to fill effectively the gaps between individual conductors, to enhance mechanical strength and to provide a high resistance to moisture, oil and chemical contamination.

The insulation of flexible cables connecting stator windings to terminal boxes shall be of the chlorosulphonated polyethylene (CPS) or ethylene propylene rubber (EPR). Natural rubber insulated cables shall not be used. Cables shall be securely fixed to the stator frame.

The winding insulation materials and cable insulation shall be resistant to flame propagation.

### **F2.1.5 Slip rings**

Slip rings and brush gear shall be designed to operate without harmful sparking and to run for not less than 3 months continuous operation without the need for adjustment or replacement. The dimensions of brushes and brush holders shall comply with IEC 60136:1986. Precautions shall be taken to protect the motor windings against the harmful ingress of carbon dust.

Removable covers shall be fitted to provide access to the brush gear and slip rings. Slip rings shall be fitted in such a way as to afford ease of maintenance and removal.

### **F2.1.6 Degree of protection for motor enclosures**

The degree of protection for motor enclosures shall be in accordance with IEC 60034-5:2000. Unless otherwise specified, the following minimum degrees of protection shall apply:

- motors located indoors in a dry and clean environment: IP22
- motors located indoors in damp or wet areas: IP54
- motors located outdoors: IP55

Fans and blades external to the enclosure shall be protected against contact by means of guards. The degree of protection offered by guards shall comply with IEC 60034-5:2000.

Totally-enclosed motors shall be provided with suitable means for breathing and for drainage to prevent the accumulation of water.

### **F2.1.7 Cooling**

Cooling arrangements shall be in accordance with IEC 60034-6:1991. Unless otherwise specified, the cooling classifications shall be as follows:

- motors located indoors in a dry and clean environment: IC01 or IC41;
- motors located indoors in damp or wet areas: IC41;
- motors located outdoors: IC41.

### **F2.1.8 Dimensions**

Motor dimensions shall be in accordance with BS 4999-141:1987.

### **F2.1.9 General constructional features**

Motor frames shall be cast iron, fabricated from steel plate or aluminium as appropriate. Frames shall incorporate substantial internal ribbing to provide high structural strength.

End covers, end shields, external fan cowls and other external components shall be of adequate strength and robustness, and shall be constructed of metal unless otherwise approved by the Engineer.

Plastic components shall be designed to take into account the environmental conditions and the long-term effects of operating temperature, ageing, and thermal stability of the material. Where used for external components, the material shall be resistant to flame propagation.



Where plastic covers enclose live parts, the design shall eliminate the risk of electrical shock to personnel during operation of the motor.

#### **F2.1.10 Bearings — general**

Bearings shall be capable of accepting:

- the mechanical and electrical forces imposed on them by the rotor;
- the forces imposed by the motor altitude;
- external forces due to the drive method.

Bearings shall be of the rolling or plain type as determined by consideration of motor rating and speed, shaft system, duty, method of drive and the type of bearing of the driven equipment.

Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer, motors rated up to and including 750kW at 1000rpm, 530kW at 1500rpm and 375kW at above 1500rpm shall be fitted with rolling-type bearings.

Where bearings are insulated from the main frame to suppress shaft circulating currents, they shall be connected to earth at one point via a link. The link shall be removable to permit testing of the bearing insulation. Oil and water pipes, direct-driven oil pumps and any other ancillary equipment shall be insulated as necessary to maintain the integrity of the bearing insulation. The insulation shall not be short-circuited by the application of electrically-conducting paint.

#### **F2.1.11 Bearings - rolling-type bearings**

Rolling bearings shall comply with the relevant International Standards and the assembly shall be designed to exclude the ingress of dirt and water. The bearings shall be grease-lubricated or oil-lubricated where the shaft speed is in excess of that permitted by the former. The bearing assembly shall be sealed to prevent leakage of the lubricant along the shaft and shall be designed to permit the easy removal of bearings. Oil-lubricated bearings shall be fitted with a breather.

Rolling-type bearings shall be selected to meet the following requirements:

- a minimum life of 40 000 hours when the forces on the bearing are from the motor only and 32 000 hours when the forces include those from the motor and the driven unit;
- a re-lubrication interval preferably of 8000 hours but not less than 4000 hours;
- a maximum outer-race temperature of 80°C.

Rolling bearings of the 'sealed-for-life' type shall operate for a minimum of 18 000 running hours, or for a period of 5 years if the latter occurs sooner.

Grease-lubricated bearings shall be packed with lithium-based grease at the time of assembly.

A separate grease nipple shall be provided for each lubricating point. Grease nipples shall be manufactured from steel and shall comply with BS 1486-1:1959. Bearings shall be provided with facilities to eject surplus grease.

Oil-lubricated bearings shall be provided with an oil reservoir, breather and, if appropriate, an external make-up reservoir. The reservoir shall have a filler plug and an oil-level indicator.

Where there is a danger of vibration from other plant being transmitted to a stationary motor, provision shall be made to prevent fretting damage to the bearings.

It shall be possible for lubrication to be carried out with the motor stationary or running and without the need to remove guards.

#### **F2.1.12 Bearings - plain bearings**

Plain bearings shall be self-lubricated by oil rings or discs, or alternatively, shall be forced-lubricated. The bearings shall be designed to exclude the ingress of dust and water, shall have provision for breathing and shall be sealed to prevent leakage of oil. Bearings shall be fitted with an accessible drain plug, provision to permit the cleaning of the oil sump, and a transparent window or other approved facility for observing the oil feed.

The two bearing-shell parts shall have white-metal linings and shall be self-aligning. The two bearing shells shall be located to each other by dowels.

The temperature of the oil leaving the bearing shall not exceed 70°C. Bearings shall incorporate thermometer pockets or shall be fitted with a dial-type thermometer as specified. Dial-type thermometers shall incorporate two sets of adjustable contacts for alarm and motor-trip initiation. The contacts shall be wired to a terminal box.

The oil rings or discs of self-lubricating bearings shall run in an oil-bath. Bearings shall have provision for filling and a clearly-visible oil-level indicator. The oil-level indicator may be fitted externally to the bearing.

Forced-lubricated bearings shall be supplied from a self-priming oil pump driven from the main shaft system or from a separate pump. An oil-flow indicator shall be provided for each bearing together with oil cooler, oil tank filter valves and all interconnecting pipework. Unless otherwise specified, the oil-feed system shall be fitted with a pressure gauge and flow switch. The pressure gauge shall incorporate two sets of adjustable contacts for alarm and motor-trip initiation. The contacts shall be wired to a terminal box.

#### **F2.1.13 Balancing**

Rotors shall be dynamically balanced with full key. The rotors of motors fitted with an external fan shall be initially balanced without the fan and then with the previously statically-balanced fan fitted. Any additional weights shall be fitted to the fan balance rings.

#### **F2.1.14 Noise levels**

Unless otherwise specified, the mean sound power level shall not exceed those given in IEC 60034-9:1997, class 'Normal'.

#### **F2.1.15 Vibration levels**

Unless otherwise specified, the maximum limits of vibration severity for horizontally mounted motors shall be quality grade 'N' (normal) as given in BS 4999-142:1987. For vertical

motors, the same limits shall apply to the lower bearings and 1.5 times these limits for top bearings unless otherwise agreed with the Engineer.

#### **F2.1.16 Lifting facilities**

All heavy parts of motors shall be provided with facilities for lifting.

#### **F2.1.17 Temperature-monitoring devices**

Monitoring devices for motor-winding temperature indication and thermal protection shall be of the resistance or thermocouple type as specified. For thermal protection application only, positive temperature coefficient (PTC) type thermistors shall be used unless otherwise specified.

Resistance and thermocouple monitoring devices shall be distributed evenly around the stator periphery and installed at the hottest points. The devices shall not be directly exposed to the cooling air.

Thermistors shall be installed in the stator end winding and shall be distributed evenly over the winding periphery. The thermistor reference temperatures for alarm and tripping shall be in accordance with BS 4999-111:1987.

Monitoring devices shall be wired to an insulated terminal strip within a dedicated terminal box fitted with an identification label.

Devices for bearing and cooling air temperature monitoring shall be of the thermocouple type.

The requirements for temperature-monitoring devices shall be as specified.

#### **F2.1.18 Anti-condensation heaters**

Anti-condensation heaters shall be fitted to all low-voltage motors located outdoors and all high-voltage motors.

The requirement for anti-condensation heaters for low-voltage motors located in other areas shall be specified.

The rating per unit length of the heaters shall be such that the surface temperature of the heater does not exceed 200°C in an ambient temperature of 40°C. The heater voltage shall be 240V unless otherwise specified.

Heaters shall be connected to an insulated terminal strip within a dedicated terminal box by means of flexible butyl rubber insulated leads. The terminal box cover shall be fitted with a warning label advising the need to isolate the supply before removing.

#### **F2.1.19 Terminal boxes**

Terminal boxes shall be cast iron or fabricated from sheet steel as appropriate to the motor frame construction and shall have a matching cover. A neoprene-bonded gasket shall be fitted between the box and motor frame and between the box and cover.

Terminal boxes shall be dimensioned to permit external cables to be satisfactorily connected. The cable box design shall take in to account the need to connect oversized cables required for volt-drop or short-circuit considerations.

Terminal boxes shall be provided with a removable cable gland plate and shall be capable of being turned through 360° in steps of 90°. Unless otherwise specified, gland plates fitted to motors for use with variable-frequency converter-type speed controllers shall be insulated from the cable box with facilities for shorting out.

The termination arrangement for low-voltage motors shall be of the air-insulated stud type. The termination arrangement for high-voltage motors shall be of the phase-insulated, phase-separated or phase-segregated stud type as specified.

Terminations, associated leads and terminal boxes shall withstand the effects of a short circuit at the motor terminals without damage. For low-voltage motors, unless otherwise specified, it may be assumed that the supply protective device will be of the current-limiting type. For high-voltage motors, the short-circuit withstand requirements shall be as specified.

Winding terminations and terminal markings shall comply with BS 4999-145:1987 and BS EN 60034-8:2007 respectively.

The terminal boxes shall have a degree of protection of at least IP 55 for outdoor application.

## **F2.2 Hollow-shaft motor drives for borehole pumps**

In addition to the requirements for 'Electrical motors', hollow-shaft motor drives shall be designed to permit axial adjustment of the pump drive shaft and shall incorporate a thrust bearing in the upper end shield of the motor.

The thrust bearing within the motor shall be able to support the weight of the rotating parts of pump, drive shaft and motor, combined with hydraulic axial load under all conditions of pumping. The bearing shall be of the Michell tilting-pad type with suitable arrangements for circulating and cooling through a cooling coil in the bearing oil reservoir. A thermometer shall be fitted to indicate the bearing temperature. A visual indicator shall be fitted in the cooling circuit to show that the liquid is flowing. A temperature sensor shall be fitted and shall be arranged to open the starter contactor if the bearing should overheat. The bearing selected shall be suitable for a life of 5 years under the specified operating conditions.

The motor shall incorporate a ratchet of the bass and ramp or similar type to prevent reverse rotation.

## **F2.3 Paint and Finish**

All motor parts exposed directly to atmosphere shall be provided with synthetic enamel finish paints to produce a neat and durable surface which shall prevent rusting and corrosion.

## **F2.4 Tests**

Motors shall be subjected to all the routine tests as per the applicable standard in the presence of the Engineer's Representative. Copies of test certificates of type and routine tests shall be furnished for the Engineer's approval. The Contractor shall provide calibration test certificates from standard laboratories traceable to national/international standards.

### **F3.0 ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMERS**

#### **F3.1 Liquid-immersed power transformers**

##### **F3.1.1 Standards**

Liquid-immersed transformers shall comply with IEC 60076.

##### **F3.1.2 Service conditions**

Unless otherwise specified, the normal service conditions as stated in BS EN 60076-1:1997 shall apply.

##### **F3.1.3 Dielectric fluids**

Unless otherwise specified, the dielectric fluid shall be mineral oil conforming to BS 148:1998.

Low-flammability fluid shall be synthetic silicone or ester-based as specified.

##### **F3.1.4 Cooling method**

Unless otherwise specified, the cooling method shall be natural oil and air circulation.

##### **F3.1.5 Tanks and radiators**

Tanks shall be fabricated from mild steel sheet and shall be provided with a skid type base. The tank shall be constructed to prevent distortion when the complete transformer is lifted, jacked or transported.

Unless otherwise specified, mineral-oil-filled transformers shall be of the free-breathing type and shall be fitted with a dehydrating breather. Synthetic-fluid-filled transformers shall be of the sealed type.

Tank covers shall be designed and constructed to prevent the accumulation of water.

Cooling radiators shall be of the detachable pressed-steel panel type or corrugations on the tank side as dictated by the transformer rating and design. Tanks with corrugated sides shall have strengthening bars to provide rigidity and mechanical strength.

##### **F3.1.6 Cores**

Cores shall be manufactured from laminations of cold-rolled, low-loss and grain-orientated electrical sheet steel having physical characteristics conforming with IEC 60404-1:2000.

Each lamination shall be coated on both sides with insulation which shall be unaffected by mineral oil or other dielectric fluid and continuous operation at the design temperature of the transformer.

The core shall be of interleaved construction with mitred or step-lap mitred construction, and shall be designed to provide uniform flux distribution throughout the magnetic circuit and

minimise flux saturation at corner joints.

The core limb laminations shall be held in compression by heavy-duty cotton tape, bands or bolts depending on core size.

Depending on the physical size of the core, top and bottom yoke laminations shall be clamped between steel channel sections, plates or folded steel clamps. The top and bottom channels, plates or clamps shall be secured to each other by means of steel tie rods to eliminate tensile stress in the core limbs when the core and windings are lifted.

The flux density at any point in the magnetic circuit, when the transformer is connected on the principal tapping and operating at rated voltage and frequency, shall not exceed a value consistent with low loss and noise, with an upper limit of 1.8 Tesla.

### **F3.1.7 Windings**

High-voltage and low-voltage windings shall be manufactured from high-conductivity copper. Conductors shall be insulated with high-quality paper or synthetic varnish according to design requirements. Insulation levels shall comply with IEC 60076 Tables 8 and 9 unless otherwise specified.

High-voltage windings shall be of the layer or disc type depending on voltage and application. Low-voltage windings shall be of the helical layer type. Windings shall be constructed and braced to withstand the forces arising under short-circuit conditions without deformation or movement.

Tapping and phase leads shall be multi-paper covered flexible conductors. The leads shall be rigidly braced and supported to prevent movement under short-circuit conditions. Barriers shall be provided between phase and tapping leads.

Three-phase distribution transformers shall be connected delta-star, connection symbol Dyn 11, unless otherwise specified.

### **F3.1.8 Tappings**

Tappings shall be positioned to minimise voltage stress and to maintain electromagnetic balance of the windings as far as possible over the tapping range.

### **F3.1.9 Off-circuit tap changing**

Unless otherwise specified, transformers shall be fitted with an off-circuit tap-changing facility having a tapping range not less than plus and minus 10% and 10% of nominal supply voltage in steps of 1.25% as specified. Tap selection shall be by means of an externally-operated self-positioning switch.

Provision shall be made for the locking of the tapping switch handle in each position by means of a padlock having a 7mm diameter shackle.

The tap position shall be clearly marked.

### **F3.1.10 On-load tap changing**

On-load tap-changers shall be of the self-contained and fully-automatic type with high-speed resistor-load selector switches. The design shall permit bi-directional power flow at rated current. Tap-changers shall be manufactured and type tested in accordance with IEC 60214-1:2003.

The tap-changer shall be mounted on the side of the main transformer tank. Oil in the switch compartment shall be separate from the oil in the main transformer tank.

The tap-changer shall be fitted with a conservator complete with an oil surge and low oil-level relay with trip contacts, silica gel breather and padlockable drain valve.

The design and construction of the selector and changeover switch shall minimise maintenance, electrical losses, contact erosion and the formation of carbon deposits. Transition resistors shall be wound from nickel-chrome or nickel-copper conductors.

The driving mechanism shall be an integral part of the tap-changer. The moving contact assembly shall be indexed from tap to tap at high speed using the stored energy of a spring-charged battery. The spring battery shall be charged by an electric motor. A manual spring-charging facility shall be provided.

The design of the tap-changer shall ensure that when a tap-change is initiated, it will be completed independently of the operation of control relays and switches. Failure of the auxiliary supply during the tap-changing sequence shall not prevent the completion of a tap-change. A tap-change shall be prevented when the transformer is operating at a load in excess of the rated current of the tap-changer or under short-circuit conditions.

The following facilities shall be provided:

- local/remote control selector switch;
- local tap-change initiation control switch. The switch shall be clearly labelled to indicate the direction of the tap-change;
- voltage-free auxiliary switches for the remote indication of tap position.

The following operational limitations shall apply:

- it shall not be possible for the local and remote electrical controls to be in operation at the same time;
- operation from the local or remote control switch shall initiate one tap movement and the control switch shall return to the neutral position between successive operations;
- for transformers operating in parallel, it shall not be possible for there to be more than one tap difference.

Electrical equipment for local operation shall be located in an enclosure integral with the tap-changer.

### **F3.1.11 Cable boxes**

Unless otherwise specified, transformers shall be fitted with high-voltage and low-voltage cable boxes. High-voltage cable boxes shall be of the filled type complying with

BS 2562:1979 or of the unfilled type complying with BS 6435:1984 as specified. Low-voltage cable boxes shall be of the unfilled type complying with BS 2562:1979.

Cable glands shall be supplied and fitted. Glands for polymeric insulated cables shall be of the mechanical type complying with BS 6121-2:1989. Glands shall be manufactured from brass, except where used with aluminium armoured cable when they shall be of aluminium. Glands shall be Type E1W for armoured cables and Type A2 for unarmoured cables. For armoured cables, the glands shall have an integral earth bond attachment. Disconnecting chambers shall be fitted when specified.

### **F3.1.12 Bushings**

High-voltage bushings, when specified, shall comply with IEC 60137:2003.

### **F3.1.13 Conservators**

Mineral-oil-filled transformers for rated voltages above 11 000V shall be fitted with a conservator. Transformers of rated voltage 11 000V and below shall be fitted with a conservator when specified.

Conservators shall be manufactured from sheet steel and shall be positioned above the highest point of the oil circulating system. Connections into the main tank shall be at the highest point to prevent air or gas becoming trapped under the main tank cover.

The capacity of conservators shall be adequate for the expansion and contraction of oil in the whole system under the specified operating conditions. Conservators shall be complete with filling point, drain valve with captive cap, oil level gauge, silica-gel type dehydrating breather and provision for access for cleaning. The breather shall be mounted at a height of approximately 1.5m above ground level. The pipe between the conservator and main tank shall be fitted with a valve.

All valves shall be of the gate type, have non-rising spindles and provision for locking in the closed and open positions.

### **F3.1.14 Standard fittings**

The following standard fittings shall be provided:

- diagram and connection plate;
- lifting lugs;
- earthing terminal;
- liquid level indicator;
- drain valve;
- thermometer pocket;
- padlocks.

The following fittings shall be provided as applicable:

- filling hole and cover;
- plain breathing device of weatherproof design;
- pressure-bleed device.



### **F3.1.15 Optional fittings**

One or more of the following optional fittings shall be provided when specified:

- gas and oil surge (Buchholz) relay;
- winding temperature indicator;
- dielectric fluid temperature indicator;
- pressure relief device;
- dehydrating breather.

### **F3.1.16 Gas and oil surge (Buchholz) relay**

Gas and oil-actuated (Buchholz) relays shall be located in the pipework interconnecting the main and conservator tanks. A straight run of pipe shall be provided of minimum length five times the internal diameter on the main tank side and three times the internal diameter on the conservator tank side of the relay. The pipe shall be inclined at an angle recommended by the relay manufacturer. The pipework shall not have sharp bends.

Relays shall be provided with a test cock suitable for the attachment of a flexible pipe for checking operation and main tank side isolating valve. The valve type shall be as specified for the conservator.

Relays shall be fitted with contacts which close on collection of gas or low oil level for alarm initiation and contacts which close on oil surge for circuit-breaker trip initiation.

### **F3.1.17 Winding temperature indicator**

Winding temperature indicators shall be of the dial type and shall incorporate two sets of adjustable voltage-free changeover contacts for the initiation of remote alarm and trip signals.

### **F3.1.18 Dielectric fluid temperature indicator**

Dielectric fluid temperature indicators shall be of the dial type and shall incorporate two sets of adjustable voltage-free changeover contacts for the initiation of remote alarm and trip signals.

### **F3.1.19 Dehydrating breathers**

Dehydrating breathers shall be of the silica-gel cartridge type constructed from heat-resistant glass tubing with strong metal shield. The breather design shall ensure uniform circulation of air through the charge. The whole assembly shall be constructed to form a robust and durable unit.

### **F3.1.20 Pressure-relief device**

Pressure-relief devices shall incorporate a colour-coded mechanical indicator pin and a sealed, weatherproof changeover-switch assembly for the initiation of remote alarm/trip signal.

### **F3.1.21 Drain valves**

Drain valves shall be of the gate type with non-rising spindle. Provision shall be made for padlocking the valve in the fully-closed position.

Drain valves fitted to mineral-oil-filled transformers shall be fitted with a plug.

Drain valves fitted to synthetic-fluid-filled transformers shall be fitted with a gasketed cover plate.

### **F3.1.22 Padlocks**

Padlocks for all valves and tapping switch handles shall be provided.

Padlocks shall be of the brass cylinder type with non-rusting hardened shackle. Each padlock shall have a different key number.

Two keys shall be supplied with each padlock.

### **F3.1.23 Rating and connection plates**

Rating and connection plates shall be securely fitted to the transformer. The plates shall be of non-corrodible and durable material.

### **F3.1.24 Painting**

As soon as practical after shot blasting or zinc-spray treatment, the exterior of steel tanks, radiators and conservators shall be given one coat of high-build priming paint. Two coats of durable and weather resistant paint, of contrasting colour, shall be subsequently applied. The paint shall be resistant to the dielectric fluid.

The paint coats shall be applied by a combination of spraying and flood coating to ensure complete coverage of all external areas.

Unless otherwise specified, the finish colour shall be the manufacturer's standard.

### **F3.1.25 Galvanising and zinc spray treatment**

Where specified, panel type radiators shall be hot-dipped galvanised and main and conservator tanks shall be zinc sprayed.

Hot dip galvanising shall be carried out in accordance with ISO 1461:1999 with a deposition rate of not less than 460g/m<sup>2</sup>. Zinc spray shall be applied by the flame-gun process and the average weight of zinc deposited shall be not less than 550g/m<sup>2</sup>. The treatment shall be applied immediately after shot blasting as a follow-up process, on the same day without outdoor exposure.

## **F3.2 Dry-type encapsulated winding (cast resin) power transformers**

### **F3.2.1 Standards**

Dry-type encapsulated power transformers shall comply with IEC 60076 and IEC 60726:1982

### **F3.2.2 Service conditions**

Unless otherwise specified, the normal service conditions as stated in IEC 60726:1982 shall apply.

### **F3.2.3 Cores**

Cores shall be manufactured from laminations of cold-rolled, low-loss and grain-orientated electrical sheet steel having physical characteristics conforming with IEC 60404-1:2000.

Each lamination shall be coated on both sides with insulation which shall be unaffected by continuous operation at the design temperature of the transformer.

The core shall be of interleaved mitred or step-lap mitred construction, and shall be designed to provide uniform flux distribution throughout the magnetic circuit and minimise flux saturation at corner joints.

The core limb laminations shall be held in compression by tape, bands or bolts depending on the core size.

Depending on the physical size of the core, top and bottom yoke laminations shall be clamped between steel channel sections, plates or folded steel clamps. The top and bottom channels, plates or clamps shall be interconnected by means of core limb side plates or by steel tie rods to eliminate tensile stress in the core limbs when the completed core and windings are lifted.

The fully-assembled cores shall be epoxy resin or silicone varnish coated to enhance mechanical strength, provide protection against corrosion and minimise noise emission.

The flux density at any point in the magnetic circuit, when the transformer is connected on the principal tapping and operating at rated voltage and frequency, shall not exceed a value consistent with low loss and noise, with an upper limit of 1.8 Tesla.

### **F3.2.4 Windings**

High-voltage windings shall be of aluminium foil with high-quality plastic film inter-turn insulation. Each phase winding shall be formed from several separate coils connected in series. The completed windings shall be heated under vacuum to remove moisture, encapsulated with de-gassed resin and cured to form a solid, void-free, moisture-resistant and maintenance-free structure. Insulation levels shall comply with IEC 60726:1982 tables unless otherwise specified.

The resin system shall have proven high electrical thermal and flame-resistant properties. The system shall also possess mechanical properties such that it will not crack under short-circuit or thermal shock conditions.

High-voltage winding ends and tappings shall be connected to threaded copper sockets which shall be encapsulated with the winding.

Low-voltage windings shall be manufactured from aluminium or copper sheet with resin pre-impregnated fibre-glass sheet inter-turn insulation. The width of the conductor shall be equal to the length of the coil to reduce axial short-circuit forces. The winding ends shall be sealed

with resin. The completed assembly shall be heat treated to cure the resin to form a solid winding resistant to moisture and atmospheric pollutants followed by a heat-resistant protective coating.

Low-voltage coil ends shall be brought out to pre-drilled busbar terminations.

Winding temperature-rise limits and short-circuit performance shall be in accordance with IEC 60726:1982.

Three-phase distribution transformers shall be connected delta-star, connection symbol Dyn 11, unless otherwise specified.

Low-voltage windings shall be located over the core limbs by silicone rubber strips. The high-voltage outer windings shall be radially located and axially clamped between top and bottom resilient end insulated blocks.

All winding interconnections and phase leads shall be rigidly braced and supported to prevent movement under short-circuit conditions.

### **F3.2.5 Tappings**

Tappings shall be positioned to minimise voltage stress and to maintain electromagnetic balance of the windings as far as possible over the tapping range.

Unless otherwise specified, the tapping range shall be plus and minus 5% and 5% of nominal supply voltage. Tapping selection shall be by off-circuit links.

### **F3.2.6 Lifting**

Substantial lifting lugs shall be provided on the top clamping frame.

For transformers inside an enclosure, suitable facilities shall be provided to permit lifting without distortion of the enclosure.

### **F3.2.7 Cable boxes**

High-voltage cable boxes shall be of the filled type complying with BS 2562:1979 or of the unfilled type complying with BS 6435:1984 as specified. Low-voltage cable boxes shall be of the unfilled type complying with BS 2562:1979.

Cable glands shall be supplied and fitted. Glands for polymeric insulated cables shall be of the mechanical type complying with BS 6121-2:1989. Glands shall be manufactured from brass, except where used with aluminium armoured cable when they shall be of aluminium. Glands shall be Type E1W for armoured cables and Type A2 for unarmoured cables. For armoured cables, the glands shall have an integral earth bond attachment.

### **F3.2.8 Fittings**

Transformers shall be fitted with bi-directional rollers, an earthing terminal and a winding-temperature monitoring system.

The winding-temperature monitoring system shall comprise a control unit and a thermistor probe installed in each low-voltage winding adjacent to the thermal hot spot. The thermistors shall be easily replaceable. The control unit shall incorporate individual winding temperature indication and voltage-free changeover contacts for the initiation of remote alarm and trip signals.

### **F3.2.9 Forced air cooling**

Forced air cooling shall not be required to obtain the specified transformer rated output under normal service conditions.

### **F3.2.10 Enclosures**

Enclosures shall be of the ventilated sheet steel case or cubicle type. The former shall be fitted with bolted type removable panels or doors. Doors shall be lockable and shall additionally be fitted with mechanical-type safety key interlocks to prevent opening unless both the associated high-voltage and low-voltage circuit breakers are open.

Enclosures shall provide a minimum degree of protection of IP 23 to BS EN 60529:1992.

All removable panels shall be fitted with a 'Danger High Voltage' hazard warning sign to BS 5499-5:2002.

Enclosure steelwork shall be cleaned and primed with an anti-corrosion primer followed by an under and finishing coat of paint. The finish coat may be epoxy powder or stove enamel. The individual coats shall be of contrasting colours.

The finished colour shall be as specified.

Enclosures shall be provided with a brass earthing terminal of minimum size M12. The enclosure and transformer framework shall be bonded.

### **F3.2.11 Rating and connection plates**

Rating and connection plates shall be securely fitted to the transformer and, for enclosed transformers, on the outside of the enclosure. The plates shall be of non-corrodible and durable material.

## **F3.3 Dry-type non-encapsulated winding (Class C) power transformers**

### **F3.3.1 Standards**

Dry-type non-encapsulated (Class C) power transformers shall comply with IEC 60076 and IEC 60726:1982.

### **F3.3.2 Service conditions**

Unless otherwise specified, the normal service conditions as stated in IEC 60726:1982 shall apply.

### **F3.3.3 Cores**

Cores shall be manufactured from laminations of cold-rolled, low-loss and grain-orientated electrical sheet steel having physical characteristics conforming with IEC 60404-1:2000.

Each lamination shall be coated on both sides with insulation which shall be unaffected by continuous operation at the design temperature of the transformer.

The core shall be of interleaved mitred or step-lap mitred construction, and shall be designed to provide uniform flux distribution throughout the magnetic circuit and minimise flux saturation at corner joints.

The core limb laminations shall be held in compression by tape, bands or bolts depending on the core size.

Depending on the physical size of the core, top and bottom yoke laminations shall be clamped between steel channel sections, plates or folded steel clamps. The top and bottom channels, plates or clamps shall be interconnected by means of core limb side plates or by steel tie rods to eliminate tensile stress in the core limbs when the completed core and windings are lifted.

The fully-assembled cores shall be epoxy resin or silicone varnish coated to enhance mechanical strength, provide protection against corrosion and minimise noise emission.

The flux density at any point in the magnetic circuit, when the transformer is connected on the principal tapping and operating at rated voltage and frequency, shall not exceed a value consistent with low loss and noise, with an upper limit of 1.8 Tesla.

### **F3.3.4 Windings**

High-voltage and low-voltage windings shall be manufactured from high-conductivity copper insulated with nylon polyamide tape or other material compatible with the temperature-rise limits specified in IEC 60726:1982. Insulation levels shall comply with IEC 726 tables unless otherwise specified.

High-voltage windings for operation at 3300V and above between phases shall be of the disc type, with individual disks separated from each other by keyed radial spacers.

Low-voltage windings shall be of the helical layer type.

Windings shall have adequate bracing and securing tapes to provide a strong and self-supporting structure to withstand the forces arising under short-circuit conditions without deformation or movement.

Completed windings shall be heated under vacuum to remove moisture, impregnated with silicone varnish and oven-cured to remove all solvents and to provide a strong mechanical bond and moisture-proof seal.

Three-phase distribution transformers shall be connected delta-star, connection symbol Dyn 11, unless otherwise specified.

High-voltage coil ends and tapping connections shall be insulated with silicone-elastomer

sleeving. Low-voltage coil ends shall be brought out to pre-drilled terminations.

All winding interconnections and phase leads shall be rigidly braced and supported to prevent movement under short-circuit conditions.

The windings shall be supported by means of noise- and vibration-reducing blocks.

#### **F3.3.5 Tappings**

Tappings shall be positioned to minimise voltage stress and to maintain electromagnetic balance of the windings as far as possible over the tapping range.

Unless otherwise specified, the tapping range shall be plus and minus 2.5% and 5% of nominal supply voltage in steps of 1.25% as specified. Tapping selection shall be by off-circuit links. The links shall be mounted on a board.

#### **F3.3.6 Lifting**

Substantial lifting lugs shall be provided on the top clamping frame.

For transformers inside an enclosure, suitable facilities shall be provided to permit lifting without distortion of the enclosure.

#### **F3.3.7 Cable boxes**

High-voltage cable boxes shall be of the filled type complying with BS 2562:1979 or of the unfilled type complying with BS 6435:1984 as specified. Low-voltage cable boxes shall be of the unfilled type complying with BS 2562:1979.

Cable glands shall be supplied and fitted. Glands for polymeric insulated cables shall be of the mechanical type complying with BS 6121-2:1989. Glands shall be manufactured from brass, except where used with aluminium armoured cable when they shall be of aluminium. Glands shall be Type E1W for armoured cables and Type A2 for unarmoured cables. For armoured cables, the glands shall have an integral earth bond attachment.

#### **F3.3.8 Fittings**

Transformers shall be fitted with bi-directional rollers, an earthing terminal and a winding-temperature monitoring system.

The winding-temperature monitoring system shall comprise a dial-type thermometer, the bulb of which shall be installed in the centre phase of the low-voltage winding adjacent to the thermal hot spot, or in a heated pocket supplied from a current transformer located in one output phase. The temperature-monitoring system shall be designed such that its thermal time constant corresponds closely with that of the transformer. The indicator shall incorporate two sets of adjustable voltage-free changeover contacts for the initiation of remote alarm and trip signals.

#### **F3.3.9 Forced air cooling**

Forced air cooling shall not be required to obtain the specified transformer rated output under normal service conditions.

### **F3.3.10 Enclosures**

Enclosures shall be of the ventilated sheet steel case or cubicle type. The former shall be fitted with bolted-type removable panels or doors. Doors shall be lockable and shall additionally be fitted with mechanical-type safety key interlocks to prevent opening unless both the associated high-voltage and low-voltage circuit breakers are open.

Enclosures shall provide a minimum degree of protection of IP 23 to BS EN 60529:1992.

All removable panels shall be fitted with a 'Danger High Voltage' hazard warning sign to BS 5499-5:2002.

Enclosure steelwork shall be cleaned and primed with an anti-corrosion primer followed by an under and finishing coat of paint. The finish coat may be epoxy powder or stove enamel. The individual coats shall be of contrasting colours.

The finished colour shall be as specified.

Enclosures shall be provided with a brass earthing terminal of minimum size M12. The enclosure and transformer framework shall be bonded.

### **F3.3.11 Anti-condensation heaters**

Anti-condensation heater(s) shall be fitted at the base of the windings. The heater(s) shall be suitable for connection to an external 240V ac supply, and shall be controlled via a thermostat and on/off switch located within the transformer enclosure.

### **F3.3.12 Rating and connection plates**

Rating and connection plates shall be securely fitted to the transformer, and for enclosed transformers, on the outside of the enclosure. The plates shall be of non-corrodible and durable material.

## **F4.0 ELECTRIC GENERATORS**

### **F4.1 Diesel generator sets — diesel engine**

#### **F4.1.1 General requirements**

The engine type shall have been in commercial operation for a period of not less than 3 years.

The engine shall be of the 4-stroke, water-cooled direct-injection compression-ignition type with an in-line or vee-cylinder configuration. The engine may be naturally aspirated or turbo-charged. The nominal speed shall not exceed 1500rpm for 50Hz operation.

The engine shall be rated in accordance with ISO 3046-1:2002 and shall be capable of continuous operation at rated output plus a 10% overload for 1 hour in any 12 consecutive hours running.



Unless otherwise specified, fuel oil shall be Class A2 to BS 2869:1998.

All chain and gear drives shall be located in oil-tight cases and shall be pressure-lubricated.

The engine and generator shall be mounted on a common fabricated steel bedplate with anti-vibration mountings of the multiple neoprene type impervious to water and oil.

Torsional vibrations of the complete rotating system shall be within the limits specified in Lloyd's Register of Shipping Rules and Regulations over a range  $-5\%$  to  $+10\%$  of the rated speed.

The engine shall accept full-rated load within 20 seconds from initiation of the starting sequence when starting from cold at the minimum specified ambient air temperature. The initial step load shall be not less than 40% of the full-load value unless otherwise specified.

#### **F4.1.2 Lubrication**

The engine shall have a forced lubricating system throughout using an integral gear-driven pump with a coarse strainer on the suction side. A full-flow filter of nominal micron rating not greater than 10 and having a pressure-operated by-pass valve shall be provided on the delivery side. Manual lubrication of any part of the engine shall not be accepted. The lubrication system shall not require priming prior to starting the engine.

The engine lubricating oil dipstick shall be easily accessible and minimum and maximum levels shall be clearly marked.

The engine sump shall have an easily-accessible drain point or drain pipe, fitted with a BSP plug.

When engines are specified to be suitable for uninterrupted running over a prolonged period, the following features shall be provided:

- (i) dual in-line lubricating oil filters;
- (ii) dual in-line fuel filters;
- (iii) heavy-duty air filter;
- (iv) auxiliary lubricating oil tank for installation adjacent to the engine and fitted with a sight-level gauge;
- (v) an oil circulation system.

The maximum allowed period of uninterrupted running shall be stated by the contractor and shall not be less than the specified period.

#### **F4.1.3 Cooling**

Unless otherwise specified, cooling shall be by means of a sealed or pressurised radiator of the air-blast type. For radiators mounted on the generating set baseframe, the fan shall be driven by vee-belts from the engine crankshaft. Remote radiators shall be floor-mounted and shall be complete with motor-driven fan or fans. Remote radiators shall be suitable for indoor or outdoor location as specified.

Engine-mounted radiators shall be provide with a flange for the fitting of flexible ducting.

Engine-driven pump(s) shall circulate the jacket water and lubricating oil if appropriate through the radiator sections.

A thermostatically-controlled diverter or by-pass valve shall be fitted in the engine cooling-water discharge pipework, with a return to the circulating pump suction, to maintain the circulating water at the optimum temperature irrespective of load.

The cooling system shall be provided with plugged valves as necessary to enable all parts to be drained.

#### **F4.1.4 Drive belts**

Drive belts shall be of the multiple endless vee-type which shall be resistant to fuel and lubricating oils. The number of belts fitted to each drive shall be one more than is necessary to transmit the maximum power requirement.

An accessible belt-tensioning device shall be fitted to each drive and it shall be possible to change the belt(s) without major dismantling and re-assembly.

#### **F4.1.5 Safety guards**

All exposed hot or moving parts and in particular, fans, belt drives, couplings and flywheels, shall be guarded in accordance with PD 5304:2000 and to ensure safe operation.

To permit the adjustment and inspection of drives, apertures with secured cover plates shall be provided in the guards at appropriate points.

#### **F4.1.6 Protection devices**

Devices shall be fitted and arranged to provide visual alarm indication and automatic engine shutdown under the following conditions:

- (a) oil pressure low;
- (b) oil temperature high;
- (c) coolant temperature high;
- (d) over-speed;
- (e) fuel low.

A voltage-free set of changeover contacts shall be provided for each of the above conditions for the initiation of a remote alarm. The contacts shall be wired to an enclosed metalclad terminal box.

#### **F4.1.7 Wiring**

Engine-mounted wiring shall be insulated with heat resistant insulation to CENELEC Harmonisation Documents HD 21.1 S4:2002 and HD 22.1 S4:2002 and associated parts thereof for use at temperatures of up to 85°C. Conductors shall be multi-stranded copper of minimum cross-sectional area 1.5mm<sup>2</sup> excepting special types such as screened cables.

All wiring, excluding starter cables, shall be shall be connected to an enclosed metalclad

terminal box or terminal boxes mounted on the base frame. Starter cables may be directly connected.

#### **F4.1.8 Pipe work**

Fuel pipework shall be produced from seamless steel tubing with welded or compression-type steel fittings. All other pipework shall be either seamless copper tubing with brazed or compression-type gunmetal fittings, or seamless steel tubing with welded or compression-type steel fittings.

Flexible sections of pipework shall be synthetic rubber with stainless steel braided sheaths. Flexible fuel and lubricating oil connections shall additionally have flame resistant sleeves.

All pipe flanges shall comply with BS 4504-3.3:1989 and screwed connections with BS 21:1985.

#### **F4.1.9 Heaters**

Oil and water heaters to facilitate cold starting shall be of the thermostatically-controlled type. The heating surface loading of oil heaters shall not exceed 7.5kW/m<sup>2</sup>.

#### **F4.1.10 Instrumentation**

Instruments as follows shall be provided:

- (a) lubricating oil pressure gauge;
- (b) lubricating oil temperature gauge;
- (c) cooling water temperature gauge;
- (d) turbo-charger air pressure gauge (if applicable);
- (e) running hours indicator;
- (f) tachometer;
- (g) battery charge ammeter for electric start engines;
- (h) engine stop push-button;
- (i) other instruments as considered necessary by the engine manufacturer.

The instruments shall be fitted on an engine-mounted panel supported on anti-vibration mountings. The panel shall be mounted at a convenient height and position for observation and operation.

#### **F4.1.11 Governing**

Engine governing shall be of the electronic type having a droop characteristic adjustable over the range 0 to 5%. The governor shall be Type 1 to ISO 3046-4:1997 and shall be Accuracy Class A1 or better. The maximum transient speed change shall not exceed 5% with the maximum power-system step load application as specified elsewhere.

Provision shall be made for remote adjustment.

#### **F4.1.12 Exhaust system**

Engines shall be provided with a complete exhaust system comprising rigid and flexible pipework, stainless steel bellows, silencer(s) and all necessary brackets, hangers, wall sleeves

and plates and sundries for a complete installation. Pipe wall thickness shall not be less than 3mm.

Unless otherwise specified, silencers shall be of the residential type.

The first section of exhaust from the engine manifold shall include a flexible bellows unit. The next section of pipe shall be supported to allow movement without imposing forces on the manifold.

Exhaust support brackets shall be designed to allow for pipe expansion and contraction movement.

Bends in the exhaust pipework shall be kept to a minimum and shall be of the long radius type.

Where the exhaust pipe passes through a wall, a wall sleeve and plates shall be fitted. The annular space between the pipe and sleeve shall not be less than 25mm. The space between the pipe and sleeve shall be filled with heat-resistant material.

Exhaust terminations shall not be located in close proximity to air inlet grills or opening windows where exhaust gas can re-circulate into the building. The exhaust outlet shall be arranged to prevent the ingress of water.

For long exhaust runs, a water drain point or condensation trap shall be fitted near to the engine.

Exhaust silencers and pipes, flanges, clips and fixings shall be sprayed with metallic aluminium paint in accordance with BS 2569-2:1965 Process 'D'.

Internal sections of the exhaust system shall be effectively lagged. The lagging shall be clad with aluminium sheet secured by stainless steel band clips.

Where it is not practical to lag any part of the internal section of the exhaust system with which personnel can come into contact, guards shall be fitted.

#### **F4.1.13 Starting systems**

Engine starting shall be electric or air systems as specified and shall comply with the following:—

##### **(a) Electric:**

The starting battery shall be of the nickel-cadmium or lead-acid type and unless otherwise specified, installed on an engine bed plate mounted non-corrodible tray or rack and shall have a cover of insulating material. The battery shall have sufficient capacity for three consecutive start attempts each of 10 seconds duration. In addition, the battery shall have sufficient capacity after the three start attempts to supply the maximum demand of the control panel for a minimum period of 24 hours.

The battery charger shall be of the solid-state design and shall incorporate 'float' and 'boost' charging facilities. In the 'float' charge mode, the charger shall automatically maintain the

battery in a fully-charged condition whilst supplying standing loads. In the 'boost' charge mode, the charger shall be capable of fully charging the battery from a fully-discharged condition in a period not exceeding 7 hours.

The charging characteristics for the nickel-cadmium vented type battery shall minimise electrolyte gassing.

The charger shall be complete with:

- (i) incoming supply on/off switch;
- (ii) supply on indication;
- (iii) output voltmeter;
- (iv) output ammeter;
- (v) float/boost charge selector switch;
- (vi) charger failed relay with voltage-free changeover set of contacts wired to terminals;
- (vii) charger failed indication.

The minimum requirement for the 'charger failed' alarm shall be the detection of ac supply and dc output failure. The relay shall not operate under a transient ac supply failure condition.

#### **(b) Air**

Where applicable, the air starting system shall comprise an air receiver, electric motor-driven compressor, hand-start diesel-driven standby compressor, all necessary isolating and pressure-relief valves, interconnecting pipework, gauges, water traps and drain facilities.

The capacity of the air receiver shall be sufficient for three consecutive start attempts each of 10 seconds duration.

The air receiver shall be of the vertically-mounted type complying with BS 5169:1992 and having a corrosion allowance not less than 2mm. Fittings shall include:

- (i) pressure gauge;
- (ii) pressure relief valve;
- (iii) manhole;
- (iv) isolating and non-return valves;
- (v) automatic and manual drain valves;
- (vi) pressure switch for the initiation of a low pressure alarm.

The capacity and operating pressure of the air receiver shall be determined by the Contractor.

The air compressors shall be of the air-cooled type suitably rated to deliver the required quantity of air to recharge the air receiver from minimum start to operating pressure in a period not exceeding 60 minutes.

Compressor inter and after coolers shall be of finned or wire wound copper. The compressor shall be complete with air filter, silencers, automatic fly-weight type unloader for no-load start, non-return valve, pressure gauges, pressure-relief valves and drain cocks for each stage. Pressure gauges shall be mounted on a panel.

The compressor and its driver shall be mounted on a combination steel baseplate. The diesel-

driven compressor shall be complete with fuel tank, air intake filter and exhaust silencer and pipe to atmosphere.

The diesel-driven compressor shall be arranged for hand starting.

The motor-driven compressor shall be fitted with a pressure switch for automatic switching of the electric motor. The electric motor shall be of the three-phase cage induction type with appropriate IP rating.

Air piping shall be of the seamless type complying with BS EN 10217-3:2002.

#### **F4.1.14 Fuel system:**

The fuel system shall comprise an engine-driven feed pump with duplex filters, daily service tank with supporting structure and drip tray and all interconnecting pipework including flexible engine connection pipe.

The fuel supply system comprising bulk storage facilities, fuel transfer system and engine day service tanks shall be as specified.

When specified, daily service tanks shall be fitted with the following:

- (i) high, intermediate and low-level float switches for the control of a fuel oil transfer pump and/or alarm initiation;
- (ii) a jettison connection fitted with fire valve, the connection being sized to drain the contents of the tank in a period not exceeding 5 minutes.

Unless otherwise specified, the capacity of daily service tanks shall be sufficient for eight hours full-load operation of its associated generating set.

Fire valves shall be activated from the generator set fire-detection system as specified elsewhere.

### **F4.2 Diesel generator sets — generator**

#### **F4.2.1 General requirements**

The generator shall be of the salient pole brushless type complying with BS 5000-3:2006. The generator shall be flange and foot mounted or foot mounted with open coupling, with single or twin end-shield bearings. A single-bearing machine shall be directly coupled to the engine crankshaft. A two-bearing machine shall be coupled through an intermediate flexible coupling.

The generator shall be capable of continuous operation at rated output plus 10% overload for 1 hour in any period of 12 hours without exceeding the temperature rise limits of the insulation system.

Generator windings shall be of the 2/3 pitch design to eliminate triple harmonics on the voltage waveform and fully interconnected damper windings for stable operation during parallelling.

Generator windings shall be star-connected with neutral point brought out to the main cable termination facilities and with provisions for neutral point earthing as specified.

Bearings shall have a minimum life of 40 000 hours and shall have a re-lubrication interval preferably 8 000 hours and not less than 4 000 hours. The bearing speed rating shall not exceed 80% and the bearing outer race temperature shall not exceed 70°C.

The generator enclosure shall provide a minimum protection classification of IP22 to BS EN 60529:1992, unless otherwise specified.

Oil-lubricated bearings shall be fitted with a clearly visible and protected oil-level gauge.

Generators shall be fitted with an anti-condensation heater.

#### **F4.2.2 Excitation system**

A permanent magnet pilot exciter shall provide power to the main exciter via the automatic voltage regulator. The main exciter output shall be fed to the main rotor winding through a 3-phase full-wave bridge rectifier. The diode bridge shall be protected against surges and voltage transients.

The excitation system shall sustain a short-circuit current of not less than 300% rated current for a minimum period of 5 seconds to allow external protection to operate.

#### **F4.2.3 Electrical insulation system**

The electrical insulation system shall be Class F or better to IEC 60085:2004 and the temperature rise shall not exceed the preceding thermal class.

The generator and exciter stator windings shall be impregnated with a moisture-resistant, oil-resistant and acid-resistant polyester varnish with a final coat of anti-tracking varnish. The generator and exciter rotor windings shall be impregnated with a high-strength thermo-setting epoxy resin to withstand rotational forces.

#### **F4.2.4 Automatic voltage regulator**

Automatic voltage regulators shall be of the solid-state three-phase sensing type with in-built protection against sustained over excitation. Unless otherwise specified, the voltage regulation shall be not less than Grade VR2.21 to BS 4999-140:1987.

With the application of the maximum power system step load specified elsewhere at any power factor between 0.2 and 0.8 lagging, the initial voltage shall not drop below 85% of the nominal value, recovering to 94% within 1.5 seconds.

Provision shall be made for remote adjustment.

### **F4.3 Diesel generator sets — control system**

#### **F4.3.1 General requirements**

The controls shall be designed to provide the following facilities:

- (a) automatic starting and stopping of the engine;
- (b) manual starting and stopping of the engine;
- (c) simulated mains failure for testing the automatic starting and stopping of the engine.

Subject to the approval of the Engineer, the facilities specified below may be modified to suit the manufacturer's standard control unit conditional on compliance with the overall operating concept.

#### **F4.3.2 Control panel structure**

The control panel shall be baseframe, wall or floor mounted as specified and the construction and components shall generally comply with standards specified for switchgear and controlgear.

Unless otherwise specified, the control panel shall be equipped as detailed below.

#### **F4.3.3 Generator output switchgear**

Unless otherwise specified, the generator output shall be controlled by a three-pole and neutral air circuit breaker with overload and short-circuit protection for control of the generator output. The overload setting range shall be 0.7 to 1.0. The short-circuit setting range shall be 2 to 4 times the generator rated current.

#### **F4.3.4 Indicating instruments**

- phase ammeters or ammeter with phase selector switch;
- voltmeter with phase selector switch;
- wattmeter;
- frequency meter.

#### **F4.3.5 Control switches**

- hand / auto / off;
- auto-return on / off;
- key-operated simulate mains failure / off;
- engine heater(s) supply on / off;
- generator anti-condensation heater supply on / off.

#### **F4.3.6 Push-buttons**

- engine start / stop;
- engine emergency stop.



**F4.3.7 Hand regulating controls**

- engine speed;
- generator voltage.

**F4.3.8 Indicator lights**

- main supply available;
- standby supply available.

**F4.3.9 Alarm annunciators**

- engine failed to start;
- engine high cooling water temperature;
- engine low lubricating oil pressure;
- engine over-speed;
- engine under-speed;
- generator voltage high;
- generator voltage low;
- generator circuit-breaker auto trip;
- fire detection system operated;
- emergency stop operated;
- battery charger failed;
- daily service tank low level;
- daily service tank low overflow;
- fuel transfer pump fault.

**F4.3.10 Automatic mains-failure control system**

Unless otherwise specified, generator set controls for single-unit automatic mains failure standby operation shall comply with the following requirements.

The control system shall initiate the automatic generating set start-up and shut-down sequences as described below. The controls shall be designed to operate on an 'energise to run' and 'de-energise to stop' basis.

**F4.3.11 Automatic start-up and shut-down**

With the engine control selection switch in the 'auto' position, the control system shall operate as follows:-

- On loss of both main supply and after a preset adjustable time delay of 0 to 10 seconds, engine starting shall be initiated via a mains failure relay located in the incomer unit of the associate switchboard. Concurrent with the starting of the engine, the inlet and outlet air louvres shall be opened.
- The engine-cranking sequence shall comprise a maximum of three 10-second periods. The control system shall provide facilities for adjusting both the number and duration of the cranking sequence.
- On the generating set reaching full speed and voltage and, after a pre-set adjustable

time delay of 0 to 5 seconds, a voltage-free relay contact shall close to initiate the closing of the associated standby supply contactor.

- Should the main supply be restored before the closing of the standby supply contactor, the closing of the main supply contactor shall be initiated and after a pre-set adjustable time delay of 0 to 5 minutes the engine shall be shut-down.
- On restoration of the main supply with the 'auto-return' control switch in the 'on' position and after a pre-set adjustable time delay of 0 to 5 minutes, opening of the standby supply contactor, closing of the main supply contactor and engine shutdown shall be automatically initiated. The shutdown procedure shall be in accordance with the engine manufacturer's standard practice.
- On restoration of the main supply with the 'auto-return' control switch in the 'off' position, the generating set shall continue to supply the load. The automatic shut-down sequence shall be initiated by returning the switch to the 'on' position.

#### **F4.3.12 Simulated mains failure test facility**

The facility shall permit the testing of the generating set automatic start-up sequence under a simulated main supply failure condition. With the test facility switch in the 'simulate mains failure' position, the automatic start-up sequence shall be initiated. The engine shall be stopped by returning the switch to the 'off' position.

#### **F4.3.13 Engine lock-out**

The engine shall automatically stop and lock-out under the following conditions:

- engine failed to start;
- engine high cooling water temperature;
- engine low lubricating oil pressure;
- engine over-speed;
- engine under-speed;
- generator voltage high;
- generator voltage low;
- generator circuit breaker auto trip;
- fire detection system operated;
- emergency stop operated;
- daily service tank low level.

Alarm and lock-out systems shall be inhibited during normal starting and stopping operations.

Restarting of the engine shall be prevented until the alarm has been reset.

#### **F4.3.14 Emergency stop**

The emergency stop shall operate in all control modes.

#### **F4.3.15 Auxiliary contacts**

One set of voltage-free changeover contacts shall be provided for remote status and alarm indications as follows:-

- each alarm condition;

- common group alarm for ‘generating set failed’ comprising each of the single alarms causing engine lock-out;
- generating set running;
- simulated mains failure test selected;
- generating set auto control not selected.

#### **F4.3.16 External emergency stop**

Provision shall be made for the connection of an external emergency stop push-button or switch. The associated terminals shall be fitted with a link.

#### **F4.3.17 Fire-detection system**

Unless otherwise specified, a fire-detection system shall be installed above the generating set. The system shall comprise fusible links and tensioned operating wires.

Link fusing shall initiate the operation of the engine fuel supply fire valve, daily service tank jettison fire valve when fitted and switches for initiating engine lock-out, remote alarm and, when installed, fuel transfer pump stop.

### **F5.0 ELECTRICAL SWITCHGEAR & SWITCHBOARDS**

#### **F5.1 Alternating-current switchboards and controlgear construction**

##### **F5.1.1 Construction**

Enclosures shall be fabricated from sheet steel of not less than 2.0mm thick or other approved material. Enclosures shall form a robust and rigid structure. Exterior edges and corners shall be rounded to give a smooth overall appearance and assembly bolts, screws or rivets shall not be visible on the front face.

Low-voltage switch and control boards for use at rated voltages up to and including 1000V, shall be designed and constructed in compliance with IEC 60439-1:1999. High-voltage switch and control boards for use at rated voltages above 1000V and up to and including 52kV, shall be designed and constructed in compliance with BS EN 62271.

Low-voltage switch and control boards and individual enclosures for location in purpose-designed switchrooms with controlled environment shall have a minimum degree of protection of IP31 to BS EN 60529:1992. The protection classification for low-voltage switchboards located in other indoor areas shall be IP54. For outdoor location, the degree of protection shall not be less than IP65.

High-voltage switch and control boards located indoors in a controlled environment shall have a minimum degree of protection IP3X to BS EN 60529:1992.

For other indoor areas, high-voltage switchgear shall have an enclosure protection of IP3X for enclosure withdrawable sections, and for other enclosure sections such as LV compartments, busbar and current transformer chambers, the enclosure protection shall be not less than IP52.

High-voltage switch and control boards located outdoors shall comply with the requirements of the weatherproofing test of BS EN 62271.

Forced ventilation of switchgear enclosures will only be accepted for approved applications.

Unless otherwise approved, floor-mounting enclosures shall not exceed 2300mm in height.

Lifting eyes shall be removable and replaced with bolts after installation.

Wall-mounted enclosures shall be mounted not less than 10mm away from the wall. Wall fixings shall be exterior to the enclosure.

### **F5.1.2 Arrangement**

Enclosures shall, as far as possible, be symmetrically arranged.

Where two or more enclosures are fitted together, they shall form a flush-fronted continuous suite of uniform height. Front doors and cover dimensions shall match.

Enclosures for low-voltage multi-circuit switchboards and motor control centres shall, unless otherwise specified, comply with BS EN 60439-1:1999 Form 4 having busbars, primary conductor risers, and switchgear circuit compartments fully segregated by means of metallic or non-metallic rigid barriers or partitions. Cable termination segregation on low-voltage switchgear shall be as specified elsewhere.

High-voltage switchgear and control gear shall be metalclad pattern compliant with BS EN 62271 with full panel and panel compartment segregation by earthed metallic barriers.

Switch and motor starter enclosures shall be logically grouped to reflect, as far as possible, the process with which they are associated.

Unless otherwise approved, instruments and meters, relays, control devices and indicator lights shall be mounted not less than 450mm and not greater than 2000mm above floor level and recorders shall be mounted not less than 900mm and not greater than 1400mm above floor level.

Indicating instruments, meters, relays, indicator lights, push-buttons and other components shall be arranged in a neat, functional and logical manner and shall be mounted flush with the front of the enclosure and unless otherwise specified mounted on the relevant switchboard circuit compartment or cubicle. Recessed fitting or the use of windows or apertures in panel front doors or covers will not be permitted.

Similar components shall be of the same manufacturer and pattern.

Indicating instruments, controls and relays mounted on different enclosures but having similar functions shall, where practical, be located in a physically similar position.

### **F5.1.3 Access**

The arrangement of equipment within enclosures shall permit easy access for installation and maintenance.

Access from the front of an enclosure shall be through a hinged door or, for withdrawable apparatus, by removal of the withdrawable unit. Enclosure doors and withdrawable units when in the service position shall be lockable.

Where rear access is required for maintenance of operational equipment and components, lockable lift-off hinged doors shall be provided. The hinges of lift-off doors shall be designed so that one shank engages before the other for ease of fitting.

Access to other switchgear compartments containing busbars and similar primary power conductors shall be by bolted cover plates.

Front access doors shall open at least 120° and shall be fitted with a numbered locking handle or handles with three keys. Locking combinations requiring different keys shall be approved before manufacture. Doors shall be secured to ensure firm pressure on the seal around the whole periphery.

#### **F5.1.4 Safety**

Electrical equipment shall be designed and constructed to provide a maximum standard of safety for operational and maintenance personnel.

Mechanical interlocking shall be provided to prevent access to live equipment and to protect the equipment and the operator from mal-operation.

Where access to low-voltage enclosures is necessary with equipment energised from an external source, all such equipment and terminals shall be shrouded to prevent accidental contact and warning labels shall be fitted. Shrouds shall have a minimum degree of protection IP30.

Covers fitted to enclosures in which live conductors are installed shall be fitted with a warning label.

Integral distribution boards shall permit safe access to fuse carriers and miniature circuit breakers without the need for isolation. All live connections when fuse carriers and plug-in type miniature circuit breakers are removed shall be fully shrouded.

#### **F5.1.5 Earthing**

Single enclosures shall be provided with an earth stud or earth busbar.

Multi-cubicle type enclosures shall be provided with a continuous earth busbar which shall extend over the full length. Each cubicle shall be bonded to the earth busbar.

The earth busbar shall be externally mounted or in an alternative position giving unrestricted access. The earth busbar shall be provided with two terminal assemblies for connection to the electrical system main earth terminal.

All steelwork parts shall be equipotentially bonded. A positive earth connection shall be provided to all enclosure doors on which electrical components are fitted. Earthing via the door hinge will not be accepted.

The short-time current rating of the earth busbar and connections shall be not less than the fault rating of the switchgear. The temperature rise of the busbar and connections under fault conditions shall not cause damage to the connections of any equipment to which they may be connected.

Earth terminal bolts or studs shall be brass and shall not be less than 8mm diameter.

#### **F5.1.6 Cable boxes, gland plates and terminations**

Cable boxes, gland plates and terminations shall be arranged to facilitate easy access for installation and connection of cables and cable circuit testing.

Cable gland plates shall be manufactured from sheet steel for multi-core cables and non-ferrous metal for single-core cables. Gland plates shall be mounted not less than 300mm above the base of the enclosure.

Space for cabling within terminal enclosures on switchgear for operation up to 3300 volts shall be in accordance with BS 5372:1997.

Adequate space shall be provided for the termination of over-size cable conductors.

Unless otherwise specified, high-voltage switchgear shall be provided with enclosed metalclad cable boxes with dry-type encapsulated terminations.

Auxiliary cable terminations on high-voltage switchgear shall comprise segregated enclosed cable boxes externally on the switchgear enclosures providing unrestricted safe access.

On low-voltage switchgear and controlgear, full separation shall be provided between power cable terminations.

Power-cable glanding and cable-core termination on incoming feeder panels and on unit panel/cubicle main distribution feeders shall be contained within each respective circuit panel and fully separated by metallic or non-metallic rigid barriers.

On multiple-compartmented outgoing feeder and motor control circuit panels, power cable termination segregation shall be achieved by one of the following:

- (i) cable-core termination within the respective circuit unit compartment but with glanding elsewhere;
- (ii) core termination and glanding within a common cabling compartment but with each circuit terminal assembly separated by approved insulating covers;
- (iii) each functional circuit unit having its own separate and enclosed cable termination and glanding facility.

Where cable glands are remote from the cable terminals, purpose-made cable-tray or trunking shall be provided within the enclosure for securing or accommodating the cable cores.

Terminal assemblies shall be provided for all incoming and outgoing cable conductors, and where applicable, core screen drain wires. The direct connection of external cable conductors onto switchgear and controlgear onto active components will not be accepted.

Terminals for low-voltage application shall comply with IEC 60947-7-1:2002 and shall be of the lug or pillar type unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Pillar terminals shall be of the indirect pressure type. Screwless-type terminals will not be accepted. High-voltage switchgear cable-core terminations shall be of the lug type.

Auxiliary cable and wiring terminal assemblies in a common compartment associated with different voltages or circuit type shall be segregated into clearly labelled groups. Barriers shall be provided between each terminal group.

Not more than one cable core or internal wiring core shall be connected to a single terminal. Where duplication of terminal connections is necessary, multiple terminals shall be provided with purpose made solid bridging links.

Terminals which remain energised when the main equipment is isolated shall be shrouded and fitted with a warning label.

#### **F5.1.7 Finish**

Enclosures shall be subjected to a comprehensive system of preparation, protective coating and stoved finish painting. The finish coat of paint shall be applied by the electrostatic process. The finish colour shall be as specified or as approved by the Engineer.

The preparation and painting system shall be suitable for the environment in which the enclosures will be installed.

#### **F5.2 Local control panels**

Local control panels shall be of heavy-duty construction having external fixing brackets and unless otherwise specified shall have a minimum enclosure protection classification IP54.

Small control stations housing up to three control components shall be of moulded polyester or die-cast aluminium construction complete with screw-fixed or bolt-fixed front covers. Larger stations shall be of fabricated sheet steel construction complete with hinged front access doors.

All mounted control equipment and internal components shall comply with that specified for switchgear and control boards.

Control stations shall be provided with bottom-entry cable-termination facilities with adequate glanding space provided for the required number of cables including clearance for the use of spanners.

Cable-core terminal assemblies shall be provided for all cable cores which shall be identified according to the corresponding wiring diagrams. An earthing terminal shall be provided.

Pendant type local control stations for cranes, hoists and the like shall be of moulded neoprene or equivalent heavy, flexible, high impact strength materials. The station shall be connected by a long moulded-in cable-strengthening sleeve, to minimise the possibility of cable fracture at the bending point. The enclosure shall be self-coloured in safety yellow.

Large floor-mounting local control panels wider than 900mm shall have:

- (a) anti-condensation heater with fuse;
- (b) padlocking facility, padlock and two keys;
- (c) earthing bar with terminal holes;
- (d) door-controlled internal light with fuse.

### **F5.3 Marshalling panels and boxes**

The cable-marshalling units shall comprise wall-mounting boxes or floor-mounting panels according to size and function.

Marshalling boxes and panels shall be constructed of sheet steel with ample space for routing and terminating cables and cores.

Wall-mounting marshalling boxes shall have front bolt or screw fixed cover plates.

Floor-mounting marshalling panels shall have lockable front access doors.

Construction standards shall be in accordance with the general standards specified for switchgear and controlgear.

Enclosure classification shall be:

- outdoor mounting: IP65
- indoor mounting: IP54

All marshalling boxes and panels shall be arranged for bottom cable entry and termination unless otherwise specified. Undrilled cable-glanding plates shall be provided. Gland plates on floor-mounting marshalling panels shall be located not less than 300mm above floor level, shall permit cable glanding and termination from the panel front and shall provide an effective vermin seal to the panel base.

Cable-core termination assemblies shall be provided for all cable cores including earthing cores and screens, and shall be arranged and grouped according to cable and circuit functions. At least 20% spare terminals shall be provided overall and to each terminal group.

Terminal assemblies shall be generously spaced to permit ease of cable termination, the routing of cable cores from the cable-gland plates, the fitting of core-identification ferrules and their subsequent reading, together with general direct access for inspection and circuit-test purposes.

Terminal assemblies shall be located not less than 150mm from cable-gland plates, panel sides and cover plates.

Cable cores shall be installed between gland plates and terminations in wiring trunking providing a cable to free-space factor not exceeding 50%.

All marshalling panels and boxes shall be provided with an earthing termination, together with front identification labels and internal labelling for the terminal assemblies and all auxiliary equipment.



Large floor-mounting marshalling panels wider than 900mm shall have:

- (a) anti-condensation heater with fuse;
- (b) padlocking facility, padlock and two keys;
- (c) earthing bar with terminal holes;
- (d) door-controlled internal light with fuse.

#### **F5.4 Switchboard and control-board bus bars and bus bar connections**

Busbars and busbar connections shall be of hard-drawn high-conductivity copper and shall be suitable for the specified rated voltage, rated and short-time current, frequency and insulation level.

Low-voltage switchgear and control-board busbars and busbar connections shall comply with the performance criteria given in IEC 60439–1:1999.

Low-voltage switchgear busbars and primary conductors shall be:

- (a) bare copper for waterworks or similar areas with non-aggressive atmospheric environmental conditions;
- (b) tinned copper and/or PVC insulated for wastewater works or similar areas with potentially-aggressive atmospheric environmental conditions.

In all switchgear, busbars and primary conductors shall be contained in segregated compartments accessed only by bolted removable cover plates.

High-voltage switchgear busbars and busbar connections shall comply with BS 159:1992. Busbars shall be of the non-segregated phase metal-enclosed and air-insulated type. Busbars and busbar connections shall be insulated with shrunk-on plastic sleeving or epoxy resin. Joints shall be shrouded by PVC or resin mouldings.

Busbars shall be colour coded at each switchboard section access point.

Busbar supports shall be resin monoblock mouldings.

Busbars and busbar connection arrangements shall have been type tested by an independent testing authority to verify thermal, dielectric and short-circuit withstand performance. Copies of type-test certificates shall be provided by the Contractor at the time of tendering.

In special circumstances and subject to the agreement of the Engineer, the performance of busbar and busbar connections may be substantiated by test data and experience in service on comparable arrangements.

Busbar and busbar connection systems whose performance cannot be verified will not be accepted.

#### **F5.5 Switchboard and control board wiring**

Wiring other than interconnections between electronic equipment shall be carried out using 1kV grade PVC-insulated cable complying with type BR of BS 6231:1998. With the

exception of current transformer circuits, the cable conductor size shall be not less than 1.0mm<sup>2</sup>. For current transformer circuits, the cable conductor size shall be not less than 2.5mm<sup>2</sup> subject to the knee point voltage. For interconnections between electronic equipment, the appropriate cable shall be used.

Wiring shall be installed in a neat and systematic manner and shall be securely fixed. Wiring shall be arranged so that access to any equipment or connection point is not impeded. Wiring installed in trunking shall have a cable to free-space factor not exceeding 50%.

Each cable shall be fitted with a full ring interlocking type identification ferrule at each end. The numbering shall read from the terminal outwards. The wiring identification shall correspond with the wiring diagram.

Unless otherwise indicated or approved, wiring shall be coloured as follows:

- phases: red, yellow or blue
- neutral: black
- control (ac): black
- control (dc): grey
- earth: green and yellow

Where wiring passes through metalwork the access hole shall be fitted with a suitable grommet.

At enclosure break points, interposing terminal blocks shall be provided each side of the break.

Wiring on to hinged doors or plates which are subject to movement shall be run in helical binding and shall be supported securely at both ends of the moving section.

Wiring associated with instrumentation and electronic equipment which could be affected by power frequency interference shall be screened and/or physically segregated.

Crimped-on type terminal connectors shall be fitted to all cable ends.

Cable trunking, tray and other supports for accommodating and supporting switchboard and control board wiring, shall be fixed by means of screw fasteners to the board structure; fixing by adhesive will not be permitted.

#### **F5.6 High-voltage switchgear circuit and busbar earthing**

High-voltage switchgear in accordance with BS EN 62271 shall be provided with circuit and busbar earthing facilities using either the circuit breaker or integral earth switches. The use of loose attachments will not be accepted.

Earth switches shall comply with BS EN 62271-102:2003.

Earth switches for busbar and feeder circuit application, and circuit-breaker controlled motor circuits shall have a short-circuit making capacity not less than the rated fault capacity of the switchgear.

All incomer and feeder panels shall be provided with a circuit earthing facility. At least one panel in any busbar section shall have provision for busbar earthing.

Earth switches shall be interlocked to prevent operation unless the main switching device is open and shall be fitted with a facility for padlocking in the closed position.

High-voltage switchgear provided with earthing facilities by circuit-breaker transfer shall have circuit-breaker racking facilities provided with positive locations of 'normal service, isolated, circuit earth' and 'busbar earth' positions. Circuit-breaker position shall be determined by means of a single selector device which shall be lockable in all positions.

The electrical tripping of a circuit breaker shall be inhibited when closed in the earthing position.

Mechanical key interlocks shall remain operative when the circuit breaker is in either earthing position.

## **F6.0 ELECTRICAL SWITCHBOARD COMPONENTS**

### **F6.1 Switchboard cubicle and enclosure components**

The switchboard components shall be as described in the following clauses.

### **F6.2 Indicating instruments and meters**

Indicating instruments and meters shall be flush-mounted and, where practical, shall be of the same pattern and appearance throughout.

Analogue indicating instruments shall comply with IEC 60051-1:1997 and electronic indicating instruments with a digital display shall comply with BS 7194:1990.

Induction-type integrating meters shall comply with BS 5685-5:1987 and BS 5685-8:1991 and shall be fitted with a cyclometer-type register. A maximum demand indicator shall be provided when specified. Alternating current static watt-hour meters shall comply with BS EN 62053-21:2003.

Analogue-type indicating instruments shall have a minimum bezel size of 95mm by 95mm, a 230° scale and a normal maximum reading at approximately 60% of full scale. Ammeters for motor circuits shall have a compressed over-current scale.

Unless otherwise specified, indicating instruments shall have an Accuracy Class Index 1.5 and integrating meters shall have an Accuracy Class 2.

Indicating instruments and integrating meters shall maintain the environmental protection standard of the equipment enclosure on which they are mounted. Where the fitting of supplementary covers is necessary, they shall be fitted with tamper-proof fastenings.

Portable instruments shall be of sub-standard accuracy.

### **F6.3 Indicator lights**

Indicator lights shall comply with BS EN 60947-5-1:1998. Lens colours shall comply with IEC 60073:2002 unless otherwise specified.

The lamps shall operate at not greater than 90% of their rated voltage and shall be suitable to operate at 110Vd.c. on high voltage and low voltage switchboard, and 48V d.c. on incomer and bus section circuit breaker of LV switchboard.

Lenses and lamps shall be easily removable without the use of a tool.  
Unless otherwise specified, only clustered LED type lamps shall be used.

Terminals shall be shrouded.

Indicator lights shall be provided with individual or group lamp-test facility.

### **F6.4 Labels**

All electrical plant, switchgear and controlgear shall be fully labelled, identifying the equipment designation/function, all external and internal components, all rating data, detailed equipment operating data and for danger and hazard warning.

Multiple-panel switchgear and control having rear access shall have panel designation labels mounted on the front and rear of each panel. All switchgear withdrawable sections and components shall be labelled identifying the section/component to the switchgear panel to which it belongs.

External identification labels shall be manufactured from white-black-white laminated plastic or rear-engraved plastic.

Equipment rating data labels may, subject to the approval of the Engineer, be the manufacturer's standard type.

Rear-engraved plastic labels shall be clear with black engraving unless otherwise specified. Internal labels shall be white-black-white laminate type inscribed with the component description given on the associated circuit diagram.

Labels for fuses shall identify the circuit function and have the fuse link rating inscribed.

Internal labels shall not be fixed to components or cable trunking covers.

Danger and warning labels shall comply with BS5499-5:2002, and shall unless otherwise approved by the Engineer, be manufactured from rigid plastic.

Labels shall lay flat to the surface and shall be secured by non-rusting screws.

Labels shall be in English unless otherwise specified.

Label and engraving sizes, and label inscriptions shall be approved by the Engineer before manufacture.

Embossed plastic and paper labels will not be accepted.

## **F6.5 Push-buttons**

Push-buttons shall comply with BS EN 60947-5-1:1998. Unless otherwise specified, colours of the buttons shall comply with IEC 60073:2002.

Push-buttons for plant-control functions shall be shrouded type to prevent inadvertent operation.

Emergency-stop push-buttons shall be of the latched type and shall have a mushroom-type button. Emergency-stop push-buttons shall be connected in control circuits so they are effective under all plant operating conditions. Resetting of the push-button shall not automatically re-energise the isolated plant.

Terminals shall be shrouded.

## **F6.6 Terminal blocks**

Terminal blocks shall be of the shrouded DIN rail-mounted type. Terminal mouldings shall be in melamine to ISO2112:1990, polyamide, or equivalent approved non-brittle material.

Terminals shall be of the pillar indirect pressure type compliant with IEC 60947-7-1:2002. Screw-less terminals will not be accepted.

For CT connections disconnecting link type terminal shall be used.

DIN mounting rails shall be of hot-dipped galvanised steel.

At least 20% spare terminals shall be provided at all blocks.

Every terminal block shall have a transparent clip-on cover of material that does not sustain combustion running the full length of the block.

No more than one conductor may be connected to one side of a terminal. Where duplication of terminal connection is required, multiple solid-bridge linked terminals shall be provided.

## **F6.7 Control and selector switches**

Manually-operated control and selector switches for plant control and circuit selection purposes shall conform to BS EN 60947-5-1:1998.

Control and selector switches shall have a rotary action. All switch positions and functions shall be clearly labelled.

Control switches provided for electrically-operated circuit breakers shall be of the three-position type with transit 'close', and 'trip or open' positions and a central spring-return biased neutral position. The switch operation shall be sequence-interlocked to prevent repetitive circuit breaker 'close' signal action.

Unless otherwise specified, switch operating handles shall be pistol-grip type for control

functions and spade type for circuit-selection functions.

Contacts of all switches shall be shrouded.

#### **F6.8 Anti-condensation heaters**

Unless otherwise specified, each switchboard and controlgear panel and circuit compartment shall be provided with an anti-condensation heater. Alternatively, low-voltage multi-compartmented switchgear may be provided with a common heater located at the base of each panel if appropriate to the manufacturer's standard design, and providing there is adequate means of internal thermal conduction.

Heaters shall be mounted as low as possible in enclosures and panels. Heaters shall be located to ensure free air flow over the heating element and to have no detrimental effect on temperature-sensitive devices or adjacent cabling.

Heaters shall be fitted with a safety guard the surface temperature of which shall not exceed 60°C.

Heaters shall be rated to ensure condensation does not occur under the ambient air temperature and relative humidity conditions prevailing at the location where enclosures and panels are installed.

Individual panel heaters shall be complete with protective device, on/off switch and thermostat. Heaters provided for multi-compartmented panels shall be complete with a common protective device, on/off switch and thermostat.

Heater circuits not isolated by the enclosure switch-disconnector shall have all live terminals fully shrouded and a warning label fitted.

Panel sections shall be provided with fluorescent lamp lighting fixtures of 20 W rating protected by MCB and a switch. Alternative arrangement for panel internal illumination, if proposed, shall be subject to Engineer's approval.

Single phase, 240V, 5pin, 5A power socket shall be provided in each incomer cubical for maintenance purpose requirements.

#### **F6.9 Voltage transformers**

Voltage transformers shall be of the cast resin encapsulated type complying with BS EN 60044-2:1999. The rated insulation level shall be as the associated switchgear and the accuracy class shall be 1.0 for measurement and 3P for protection unless otherwise specified. The primary voltage, rated output and frequency shall be as specified.

The primary winding shall be connected to the busbar or feeder side of the circuit breaker as specified.

Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer, the rated secondary voltage for transformers connected to single-phase systems or connected line-to-line in three-phase systems shall be 110V.

Primary and secondary windings shall be fitted with fuses. Primary fuses shall comply with IEC 60282-1:2006 and secondary fuses with IEC 60269-1:1998.

Withdrawable-type transformers shall be metalclad enclosed. Racking guides shall be provided to ensure positive transformer movement and alignment. Safety shutters shall be fitted which shall automatically cover the fixed contacts when the transformer is isolated. The shutters shall be coloured red for busbar-connected transformers and yellow for feeder-connected transformers. Padlocking facilities shall be provided for securing the transformer in the service position and the shutters in the closed position.

Voltage transformers used for revenue metering and associated secondary fuse carriers and bases shall have provision for sealing.

#### **F6.10 Current transformers**

Current transformers shall comply with BS EN 60044-1:1999 and shall be of the wound primary or ring type as dictated by output, accuracy, short-time current and space considerations.

Unless otherwise specified, the rated insulation level shall be as the associated switchgear, the accuracy class shall be 1.0 for metering, 3.0 for indicating instruments and 5P for protection.

The rated secondary current, rated output, accuracy limit factor for protection application, and frequency shall be as specified. The accuracy class and excitation characteristics of protection-circuit current transformers for differential and zoned earth-fault protection shall be that required to provide protection system performance and operational stability for power system through fault and switching load conditions.

The secondary winding(s) of each current transformer or of each set of star-connected three-phase current transformers shall be earthed at one point only, via a bolted link. The link shall be located in the instrument wiring chamber.

Separate current transformers shall be used for metering and protection. Indicating instruments may be supplied from current transformers associated with non-unit protection.

Multi-ratio current transformer tapplings shall be connected to link-boards located in the instrument wiring chamber. Connection options shall be clearly labelled.

Ring-type current transformers shall be fixed to prevent movement under normal service and through-fault conditions, and shall be easily removed.

#### **F6.11 Electrical signal transducers**

Where required for instrumentation and control, electrical signals shall be derived from transducers. These shall be connected to CTs, VTs, tachometers or direct to the power system to derive the relevant parameters.

The output from the following transducers shall be 4mA to 20mA:

- $\cos \theta$ ;
- current (I);
- frequency (Hz);
- kVA;
- kVAr;
- motor speed (rpm);
- power (kW);
- voltage (V).

The following shall have transducers or induction disc meters to give pulse outputs:

- kVAh;
- kWh.

Transducers with 4mA to 20mA output(s) shall have easily-accessible potentiometers for adjustment of zero and span. Transducers with pulse outputs, which may operate into computer systems shall have easily-accessible adjustments for the number of pulses equivalent to kVAh and/or kWh and also the pulse duration (width). This is to permit the transducer's outputs to be matched to the scan rate of the computers.

The complete transducer system shall have an accuracy of better than  $\pm 1\%$  of reading from 2% to 120% of nominal range.

Where local indication of electrical parameters derived from transducers is also required on the switchgear/starter panel, a repeater display meter operated from the transducer shall be provided. This shall use a separate circuit from the transducer's 4mA to 20mA output to the instrumentation system and the arrangement shall be approved by the Engineer.

Transducers shall be calibrated by voltage and current injection before installation in the switchgear/controlgear. Their operation shall also be demonstrated during the factory testing of the switchgear and controlgear. The transducers shall be finally calibrated on site.

#### **F6.12 Control transformers**

Control transformers shall be of the double-wound, air-cooled and chassis-mounting type designed. An earthed metallic screen shall be provided between the primary and secondary windings.

The primary voltage shall be as specified. The rated secondary voltage shall be 240V unless otherwise specified. One end of the secondary winding shall be earthed. Primary windings shall be connected phase-to-phase on three-phase power systems.

The transformer rated output shall be not less than 20% greater than the total standing load. The combination of the inrush VA of the largest contactor plus the total hold-in VA of all devices shall not result in the transformer secondary voltage falling below 80% of its rated value.

Control transformers shall be provided with primary and secondary winding protection devices.



### **F6.13 Protection relays**

Protection relays shall be mounted on the front of the switchgear or relay panel in such a position that operation and maintenance can be conveniently carried out. Auxiliary relays may be mounted internally and shall be located to be readily accessible.

Protection relays shall be contained in a dust-proof case with a clear front cover providing a minimum protection classification IP52 to BS EN 60529:1992. Cases shall be finished in phenolic black unless otherwise specified.

Unless otherwise specified, microprocessor based numerical relays shall only be used. Each relay shall have RS 485 port for communication with computer/SCADA system.

Relays shall have provision for testing the operation and calibration without disconnecting the permanent wiring by means of integral or separately-mounted plug-in test terminal assemblies.

Relays shall be flush, draw-out type unless otherwise approved by the Engineer. Each relay shall have an indicator device to show the relay has operated and its specific operating function. Each indicator shall be able to be reset manually. Re-setting devices shall not require the removal or opening of the relay.

Multiple-function relays shall incorporate function and characteristic changing devices.

All relay protection functions shall have controls for protection set point and time setting adjustment. Relay characteristics, functions and settings shall be clearly indicated on the relay element front plate.

Relays used for motor protection shall have provision of auto setting of relay characteristics.

Protection relays shall comply with IEC 60255, IEC 61000, IS 3231 and IS 8686

Relay types and performance characteristics shall be as specified.

### **F6.14 Low-voltage switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units**

Switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units shall comply with IEC 60947-3:1999 and shall be suitable for uninterrupted duty.

Switching devices shall be suitable for isolation and shall comply with Over-voltage Category IV to IEC 60947-1:2007.

Unless otherwise specified, the Utilisation Category for switching devices shall be AC-23A for alternating current and DC-23A for direct current.

Operating mechanisms shall be of the independent manual type with provision for locking in the 'off' position and shall be interlocked with the access door.

Fuse links for use in fuse-combination devices shall comply with IEC 60269-1:1998.

**F6.15 Fuses and links — general low-voltage application**

Fuses shall be cartridge type and, unless otherwise approved, shall comply with IEC 60269-1:1998.

Carriers and bases for fuses and withdrawable solid links shall be made of plastic moulded insulating materials; ceramic materials will not be accepted. Accessible live connections shall be effectively shrouded and it shall be possible to remove the fuse holder with the circuit live without danger of contact with exposed live parts.

Fuses and links functionally associated with the same control or instrument circuit shall be mounted adjacent to each other, either side-by-side (fuse on the left) or vertically (fuse uppermost).

Fuse and link colour shall be to the approval of the Engineer.

A label shall be provided for each fuse, link and fuse-link combination to identify the fuse and/or link as in the circuit diagram and to state the rating and type of fuse cartridge.

**F6.16 Earthing and neutral links**

Earthing conductor, neutral earth links and earthing links in main power supply circuits shall be solid copper bolted type.

Neutral conductor links and neutral earth links incorporated in enclosed metalclad switchgear shall be positioned to provide direct easy access.

**F6.17 Miniature circuit breakers**

Miniature circuit-breakers shall comply with BS EN 60898-2:2006.

Miniature circuit-breakers shall directly indicate the true position of the contacts and shall comply with local electrical regulations.

Operating mechanisms shall be mechanically trip-free from the operating handle to prevent the contacts being held closed under overload or short-circuit conditions.

The operating handle shall be of the toggle type and shall have an integral facility for padlocking in the 'off' position.

Each pole shall be fitted with a bi-metallic element for overload protection and a magnetic element for short-circuit protection. Multiple-pole circuit-breakers shall be mechanically linked such that tripping of one pole simultaneously trips all the other poles. The magnetic element tripping current classification shall, unless otherwise specified, be Type C.

Miniature circuit-breakers shall be capable of accepting a full range of accessories such as auxiliary switches, terminal shrouds and inter-phase barriers.

Miniature circuit-breakers shall have a rated current and category of duty as specified. The latter shall, unless otherwise specified, be not be less than M9.

The short-circuit rating shall be not less than that of the system to which they are connected. Where this cannot be attained, a back-up fuse link or links shall be fitted.

#### **F6.18 Residual current-operated circuit breakers**

Residual current-operated circuit breakers shall comply with BS EN 61008-1:2004 and 61008-2:1995.

Residual current-operated circuit breakers shall be double-pole for single-phase and four-pole for three-phase and neutral circuits. The rated current shall be as specified.

Unless otherwise specified, the trip settings shall be as follows:

- |     |   |        |
|-----|---|--------|
| (a) | rated current up to and including 40A:  | 30mA;  |
| (b) | rated current above 40A and up to 100A: | 100mA; |
| (c) | rated current above 100A:               | 300mA. |

No intentional time-delay shall be fitted unless specified.

#### **F6.19 High-voltage circuit breakers**

High-voltage circuit breakers shall be of the air-break, vacuum or sulphur hexafluoride (SF<sub>6</sub>) type as specified, complying with BS EN 62271-100:2003.

Circuit breakers shall be of the withdrawable vertical or horizontal isolation type. Circuit breaker trucks shall be of rigid fabricated sheet steel construction.

Circuit breaker carriage racking/withdrawal facilities and operating positions shall be fully labelled and interlocked to ensure correct and safe operation. Busbar and circuit isolating spout safety shutters shall be labelled and colour coded to the approval of the Engineer.

Unless otherwise specified, circuit breakers of the same rating shall be interchangeable.

The operation of vacuum circuit breakers shall not give rise to over-voltages harmful to insulation when switching inductive loads such as motors, transformers and capacitors.

SF<sub>6</sub> circuit breakers shall be fitted with a gas-filling device and low-pressure detector with facilities for alarm and lock-out initiation.

Vacuum circuit breakers shall be fitted with surge suppressor.

Circuit-breaker operating mechanisms shall be of the independent manual or power-operated spring-charged stored-energy type as specified.

For power-operated mechanisms, the recharging of the closing spring shall be automatically initiated after discharge. All limit switches for automatic control shall be an integral part of the mechanism.

Power-operated mechanisms shall be provided with the facility for manually charging the closing spring.

Spring release shall not be possible unless it is fully charged and the means for charging has been removed or disconnected.

Unless otherwise specified, power operated closing mechanisms shall be fitted with a manual release with means for locking.

Vibration and mechanical shock shall not release the closing mechanism spring.

All mechanisms shall have mechanical 'on', 'off', 'spring charged' and 'spring discharged' indicators, manual and electrical trip facilities, and voltage-free contacts wired to terminals for external 'spring charged' and 'spring discharged' indication. The manual trip facility shall have means for locking.

Circuit-breaker operating mechanisms shall be trip-free to prevent the contacts being held closed under overload or short-circuit conditions.

Circuit-breaker auxiliary switches shall comply with the requirements of BS EN 60947-5-1:1998 Class 1. They shall be readily accessible and enclosed in a transparent plastic cover. A minimum of four spare auxiliary switches, two normally-open and two normally-closed shall be provided.

Circuit breakers shall be provided with interlocks as per BS EN 62271.

Where mechanical key interlocking is fitted, circuit-breaker tripping shall not occur if an attempt is made to remove a trapped key from the mechanism.

Spring-charging motor, electrical closing release coil and trip-release coil voltages shall be as specified.

## **F6.20 Low-voltage circuit breakers**

### **F6.20.1 General requirements**

Circuit breakers shall comply with IEC 60947-2:2006, shall be of the air-break type, and shall be moulded-case or open-construction design.

Circuit breakers shall be Utilisation Category B and shall have an ultimate short-circuit capacity not less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation.

Circuit breakers for control of incoming supplies shall have a service short-circuit breaking capacity equal to the ultimate short-circuit capacity.

Feeder circuit breakers shall have a service short-circuit breaking capacity not less than 50% of the ultimate short-circuit capacity.

All circuit breakers shall be suitable for circuit-isolation duty and shall comply with Over-voltage Category IV to IEC 60947-1:2007.

The specified rated current shall be that with the circuit breaker mounted within an enclosure.

#### **F6.20.2 Open-construction circuit breakers**

Unless otherwise specified, open-construction circuit-breakers shall be used for rated currents of 630A and above.

Circuit breakers shall be of the withdrawable or fixed type as specified. Fixed circuit breakers shall be easily removable.

Withdrawable circuit-breaker draw-out mechanism shall incorporate full operational and safety interlocks and facilities compliant with IEC 60947-2:2006.

In addition, the fixed part of withdrawable circuit breakers shall be fitted with shutters over the bus bar and circuit-side main contact openings. The shutters shall be automatically operated by the withdrawal and engagement of the circuit breaker. Shutters shall be padlockable in the closed position and colour coded and labelled to the approval of the Engineer.

Circuit-breaker closing mechanisms shall be of the independent manual or power operated type as specified. It shall be possible to manually charge power-operated closing mechanisms. Circuit breakers shall be padlockable in the 'off' position.

Unless otherwise specified, open-construction circuit breakers shall be fitted with a solid-state protection system. The protection system shall be fully self-contained, needing no separate power supply to operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism. Protection requirements and characteristics shall be as specified.

Accessories such as shunt trips, under-voltage releases, auxiliary contacts and motor mechanisms shall be as specified.

Circuit-breaker auxiliary switches shall comply with the requirements of BS EN 60947-5-1:1998 Class 1. They shall be readily accessible and enclosed in a transparent plastic cover. A minimum of four spare auxiliary switches, two normally-open and two normally-closed, shall be provided.

Handling trucks shall be provided as necessary to enable the safe removal of withdrawable circuit breakers.

#### **F6.20.3 Moulded-case circuit breakers**

Each pole of moulded-case circuit breakers shall be fitted with a bi-metallic thermal element for inverse time delay protection and a magnetic element for short-circuit protection or electronic trips as applicable. Thermal elements shall be adjustable. Adjustments shall be made simultaneously on all poles from a common facility. Thermal elements shall be ambient temperature compensated. Where available, thermal and magnetic elements shall be interchangeable.

For plug-in type circuit breakers, covers shall be provided for the fixed contacts in the plug-in base.

Current limiting circuit breakers designed for fuse less motor feeders called as “Motor Protection Circuit Breakers” shall be used for motor feeder application, as specified. The circuit breakers shall fulfil the isolation conditions as per IEC 60947-3 and additional test conditions for circuit breakers with isolation characteristics as per IEC 60947-2 in concurrence with IS 13947-2.

#### **F6.21 Low-voltage ac motor starters**

Motor starters shall be combination-type as defined in and complying with IEC 60947-4-1:2000, IEC 60947-4-2:1999, IEC 60947-4-3:1999 and shall comprise combinations of fused switch connector/contactors or circuit breaker/contactors as specified.

Motor starter contactors shall be of the electromagnetic type.

Utilisation Category shall be selected to suit the application of the motor starter, but shall be not less than AC-3.

Unless otherwise specified, motor starters shall be suitable for uninterrupted duty.

Motor starters shall be fixed or withdrawable pattern as specified.

Motor starter operating and control circuits shall be 240V ac. Control circuit supply shall be derived from individual starter integral control transformers, unless otherwise specified.

Motor starters shall have Type 2 short-circuit co-ordination. The protective device, contactor and overload-relay combination shall have undergone and passed all the tests specified for full Type 2 co-ordination.

Unless otherwise specified, overload protection shall be provided by a hand-reset ambient temperature compensated direct-acting thermal relay. The relay shall operate under single phasing conditions.

Contactor auxiliary switches shall comply with the requirements of BS EN 60947-5-1:1998 Class 1. They shall be readily accessible and enclosed in a transparent plastic cover. A minimum of four spare auxiliary switches, two normally-open and two normally-closed, shall be provided.

Motor starters shall be equipped with the following controls and indications:

- (a) start and stop push-buttons;
- (b) running, available and fault indicator lights.
- (c) local-remote switch.

Other control push-buttons, control switches and indicator lights shall be provided as specified.

Motor starters shall be equipped with an ammeter and hours-run meter when specified.

Motor starters shall be provided with the following voltage-free changeover contacts wired to terminals:

- (a) running/stopped;

- (b) healthy/failed;
- (c) available/unavailable.

Additional contacts shall be provided as specified.

Provision shall be made to enable control circuits to be tested with the main circuit supply isolated.

Where control and interlock circuits are broken via plugs and sockets on withdrawable type starters, one interconnecting lead shall be provided for each size and type to facilitate testing in the withdrawn position.

## **F6.22 Motor starters — high-voltage**

High-voltage motor starters at 3.3kV, 6.6kV or 11kV shall be of the metalclad totally-enclosed pattern in accordance with BS EN 62271, and with construction and general component standards in accordance with those specified for ac switchboards and control gear.

High-voltage starters shall be of single-tier withdrawable truck-mounted pattern and compliant with IEC 60470:2000.

Fixed housings shall be provided with automatic safety shutters on the busbar-isolating spouts for motor or single end circuit control. Feeder-isolating spout shutters shall be fitted when specified.

Breaker/Contactors shall be operated by 110V dc derived from battery and charger unit.

Each starter shall have low-voltage and high-voltage equipment fully segregated.

Contactors, high-voltage HBC fuses, control transformers and associated components shall be mounted on the starter withdrawable truck providing safe maintenance access to all main active equipment. Truck-mounted low-voltage equipment shall be segregated from the high-voltage circuit by an earthed metallic screen.

Contactor auxiliary switches shall comply with the requirements of BS EN 60947-5-1:1998 class 1. They shall be readily accessible and enclosed in a transparent plastic cover. A minimum of four spare auxiliary switches, two normally-open and two normally-closed, shall be provided.

Separate segregated low-voltage compartments shall be provided accessed by separate hinged doors.

Contactors shall comply with IEC 60470:2000 Part 2 and shall have utilization category AC–3 and duty of Class 0.03 unless otherwise specified.

Contactors shall be vacuum or air as specified. Operation of vacuum contactors shall be such that current is broken at, or very near to zero, to minimise current chopping.

High-voltage HRC fuses shall comply with BS EN 60282-1:2006 and BS 2692-2:1956 and shall be of the striker-pin pattern. Fuse protection shall be fully co-ordinated with the

contactor performance throughout the range of operation of all starter components under voltage over-current and earth-fault conditions. Striker-pin operation shall ensure contactor opening under single-phase fault conditions.

Comprehensive interlocking and padlocking shall be provided to ensure correct operation and operator safety.

High-voltage starters shall incorporate an integral fully interlocked manual/automatic feeder-circuit earthing switch. The switch shall be mounted on the starter fixed housing and its operation shall be fully interlocked with the operation of the contactor isolating truck. Earth-switch operation shall be from the front of the starter and operable only with the starter in the isolated position. Earth-switch automatic operation shall be as follows:

- automatic opening when moving the contactor truck from the 'isolated' to 'service' position;
- automatic closing upon the full withdrawal of the contactor truck from the fixed housing.

Viewing facilities shall be provided permitting visual checking of the position of the switched position of all earth-switch contacts with the cubicle door closed and the truck in the isolated position.

Earth switches shall comply with BS EN 60129:1994, and shall have performance rating fully co-ordinated with the starter service application. For motor starter control duty, the earth switch shall have a short-circuit making capacity compatible with the maximum potential stored energy of a rotating machine of output rating consistent with the AC-3 rating of the contactor, or 10kA peak and a short-time rating of 4kA rms for 1 second, whichever is greater.

The earth-switch mechanism shall have padlocking facilities and means of opening the switch to permit feeder circuit testing.

Starter control, protection, instrumentation, and metering facilities shall be as specified.

## **F6.23 Variable-speed drive controllers and soft starter**

### **F6.23.1 Supply system**

The frequency converter shall operate from a 3-phase, 3-wire supply system at any frequency between 47Hz and 52Hz. and with a voltage variation of +/-6% from nominal value. The complete drive system shall produce rated output under the above supply conditions.

The complete drive system shall also continue to function, with a +/-10% voltage fluctuation. The supply system neutral point will be solidly earthed and the supply fault level will be specified.

The frequency converter shall operate satisfactorily from the supply specified above. Should the contractor consider that a separate frequency transformer be necessary or consider that the frequency converter be fed from a higher voltage point in the supply network then such proposal shall be submitted for approval.

If the primary voltage of any frequency converter transformer is 415V, then the transformer



shall be housed within the frequency converter enclosure.

The harmonic current spectrum of each frequency converter generated at the point of common coupling shall be stated in the Schedule of Particulars and Guarantees when running at maximum duty.

Serial communication port shall be provided to facilitate remote monitoring and control.

#### **F6.23.2 General design and construction of equipment**

The frequency converters shall either be mounted as part of the switchboard or in free-standing enclosures compatible in appearance with the switchboard.

For motor outputs of less than 250kW, the frequency converters shall be designed to feed a standard cage induction motor. The motor stator may be wound to accept maximum inverter output voltage at maximum duty speed, provided that an emergency bypass facility is not required.

For motor outputs in excess of 250kW, other types of frequency converter may be offered, designed to feed brushless synchronous motors or slipping induction motors (slip-energy recovery system).

The type of frequency converter, type of power semiconductors and type of motor offered shall be clearly stated in the Schedule of Particulars.

The motor and frequency converter shall be compatible in all respect. In particular, the following points will be addressed:

- the drive motor shall be rated to produce 110% of the maximum load power when frequency converter fed;
- the motor shall be sized to allow for continuous running under all load conditions throughout the specified range taking into account particularly the higher machine losses when inverter-fed and the reduction of cooling fan output at reduced speeds, although the possibility of using a separate drive for the motor cooling fan may be considered where appropriate;
- the drive system shall be designed to achieve the highest practicable overall efficiency, taking into account the motor efficiency degradation when inverter-fed and the losses in any power factor correction/harmonic filter networks;
- the drive system shall develop sufficient starting torque to start the driven equipment under any operating conditions;
- the Contractor shall ensure that any torque pulsations produced by the drive system do not cause torsional resonance in the shaft system at any point in the whole speed range;
- the drive control system (for pump applications) shall be such that over-current trips do not occur during any hydraulic conditions, irrespective of the pump characteristics, so that in the case, for example, of a pump exhibiting a rising-power run-out curve, the motor speed shall automatically be reduced until the drive reaches a stable operating point within the continuous capability of the motor-inverter system.

### F6.23.3 Equipment and features

Cubicles shall contain all necessary equipment for the correct control, operation, protection, maintenance and sequencing of the drives and shall include:-

- (a) Incoming triple-pole load-break, fault-make circuit breaker with over-current trips, either type of device being mechanically interlocked with cubicle door. A minimum of 2 sets of auxiliary changeover contacts shall be fitted to the incoming devices.
- (b) Main contactor to IEC 60947-4-1:2000, feeding the input bridges, intermittent duty class 0.1, utilisation category AC-3, electrical endurance 300 000 operations minimum. The contactor shall also meet the requirements of the eight-hour duty as defined in IEC 60947-4-1:2000.
- (c) MCCBs or MCBs for isolation of reference, excitation and control supplies.
- (d) Three-phase input bridges, dc-link component, inverter bridges and all necessary control equipment.
- (e) Surge-suppression devices and device snubber networks.
- (f) Isolator, fuses (or MCCB), contactor and thermal-overload protection for ventilation fan motor.
- (g) Total load ammeter.
- (h) Speed (or, if speed signal not available, inverter output frequency).
- (i) Hours-run meter.
- (j) Local / off / remote and manual / auto control selector switches as required.
- (k) Emergency stop button operational in all control modes - latching mushroom type, coloured red and lockable in the stop position. The push-button shall be of the key reset type. An emergency stop shall also be located at the plant. Emergency stops shall be connected in series to directly break the main contactor control supply and open the main contactor.
- (l) Stop and start push-buttons.
- (m) Speed limit pre-setting potentiometers or programmable controls shall be provided to enable the minimum and maximum speeds to be set. The setting of these shall determine the variable range within which the speed of the motor can be controlled. The above controls (and any other controls that can be expected to be adjusted on site) shall be easily accessible, without the need for special extension cards or modules not integral with the basic drive control electronics.  
Speed-adjusting facilities shall be provided for each of the following:
  - Manual control - by adjustment of a speed setting potentiometer or programmable control externally mounted on the drive.
  - Auto control - this shall be capable of accepting a proportional 4mA to 20mA instrumentation speed-reference signal and shall not present an impedance greater than 500 ohms. The signal will be arranged such that:
    - 4mA = Low-duty speed.
    - 20mA = High-duty speed.
- (n) Anti-condensation heaters and thermostats for the enclosure. Circuitry for 240V motor anti-condensation heaters, with fuse and switching contactor.
- (o) Test facilities for operation/testing of the inverter under no-load conditions: with motor disconnected when switched to test mode.
- (p) Internal lighting and an RCD-fed 13A, 240V, 50Hz switch socket outlet shall be incorporated for testing and maintenance purposes.
- (q) RS-232 serial port for transmission of operation status of the frequency converter to

SCADA system for control and monitoring.

- (r) Replaceable surge or lightning protector shall be provided to properly protect the frequency converter against electrical surge and lightning.

#### **F6.23.4 Protection**

The frequency converter shall incorporate as a minimum, the following protection:

- (a) instantaneous and inverse-time over-current protection for frequency converter and motor protection;
- (b) high-speed fuses for protecting converter/inverter semiconductor devices with intertrip;
- (c) phase failure or reversal;
- (d) over-voltage;
- (e) under-voltage;
- (f) earth fault;
- (g) for all motors a thermistor protection relay shall be included.

The operation of voltage-sensitive protection relays shall be time-delayed to prevent unnecessary tripping of the controller in the event of transient supply-voltage variations and be suitable for distorted supply voltage waveforms.

The facilities listed are the minimum foreseen. Any additional facilities which the Contractor considers necessary for the satisfactory operation and maintenance of the controllers shall be provided.

Indication of the reason for failure shall be by lamps or LEDs which shall be visible from the outside of the enclosure without the need to open the enclosure.

Such lamps or LEDs shall 'latch' once a fault has been indicated and be reset by a reset push-button.

#### **F6.23.5 Power factor correction/harmonic filters**

Each drive system shall operate with an input power factor between 0.95 lagging and unity throughout the speed and load range. On power-factor correction systems detuning reactors shall be fitted, if necessary, to limit total rms capacitor currents to rated values. Such reactors and similar reactors within harmonic filters, shall be fitted with extra core clamps, anti-vibration mounts, or any other features the Contractor considers necessary to limit the propagation of magnetostrictive noise. Each of the above harmonic filter reactors shall be fitted with temperature detectors which will each operate a warning lamp on the front of the enclosure to indicate which reactor has overheated.

The above precautions concerning reactor noise shall also apply to all other reactors within the drive system, such as line reactors and dc link chokes.

The fifth harmonic current distortion at the frequency converter input terminals shall be less than 35% during operation within the variable speed range.

#### **F6.23.6 Radio frequency interference**

Under all conditions of operation, the frequency converter shall not emit signals that may interfere with radio transmission or reception.

The radio frequency interference generated by the variable speed drive shall not exceed the limit specified in BS EN 61000-6-4:2001. Values of radio interference voltage shall meet the requirements of current Indian Standards and any local statutory requirements. In the event of there being differences between Standards or Regulations, the most stringent shall apply.

#### **F6.23.7 Interlocks**

Electrical interlocks shall include the following in addition to any others considered necessary by the Contractor for the safe operation and protection of the equipment:-

- (i) Thermal protection of thyristor converter and inverter bridges for naturally and force-ventilated bridges.
- (ii) Thyristor bridge cooling air flow switch interlocks (if force-ventilated bridge).
- (iii) A minimum of one normally-open and one normally-closed contact corresponding to the following control relays/functions, shall be wired to the main cubicle terminal rail for future interlocking:
  - 'Drive Healthy', meaning it is in a state ready to start if called to do so;
  - 'Drive Running', meaning main contactor is closed, all electronic and inhibits released and no fault conditions are present. Preferably this contact will detect motor rotation;
  - 'Drive Tripped', meaning drive has stopped due to a fault condition within the drive system.

#### **F6.23.8 Harmonics and waveform notching on mains supply system**

The Contractor shall ensure that the Electricity Council Recommendations G5/4 Stage 2 limits for harmonic currents generated at the Electricity Supply Authority point of common coupling are not exceeded.

The Contractor shall ensure that the above requirement is met taking into account the pre-conditions listed of G5/4.

Furthermore, the Contractor shall demonstrate that the addition of the new variable-speed drive equipment shall not adversely affect any part of the existing plant and is not likely to affect proposed new items of plant. This assurance shall be gained by a process including, but not confined to, the following points:

- (i) The total harmonic voltage distortion at any point on the LV-distribution system shall not exceed the levels stated for 415V in table 3 of G5/4. The voltage distortion is to be calculated under the condition where all drives (both new and existing) that may operate simultaneously are running at full load.
- (ii) It shall be taken into account that many drive types produce harmonic currents derived from the inverter bridge commutation frequency. These harmonics, known as 'non-integer' or 'inter' harmonics are a synchronous with the mains supply waveform. They shall be minimised in amplitude by suitable sizing of dc link components or other means to ensure that resonance or 'beats' do not occur in the running range.
- (iii) Frequency converters that incorporate a line-commutated converter input bridge, produce notching of the mains sinusoid. The size of these notches shall be limited

to the values in ANSI/IEEE guide 519–1981, General System Class unless otherwise specified, or by raising the effective pulse number of the drive systems or by other means.

#### **F6.23.9 Noise**

When running at any combination of speed and load, the frequency converter system shall not create a sound pressure level greater than 85dBA measured at a distance of one metre in any direction from the surface of the frequency converter enclosure. The noise measurements shall be carried out in a similar manner to that described in IEC 60034-9:1997.

#### **F6.24 Switchboard ancillary equipment**

The following ancillary articles shall be supplied with each switchboard:

- (a) 1 no. black fluted rubber safety mat to BS 921:1976 running the length of the switchboard, 5mm thick, 750mm wide.
- (b) 2 pairs rubber gloves to BS EN 60903:2003 - class according to rated voltage of switchboard.
- (c) 1 no. 'treatment for electric shock' metal enamel instruction plate suitable for screen attachment.
- (d) Special tools and appliances required for operation, maintenance and testing purposes.

### **F7.0 EARTHING AND LIGHTNING PROTECTION**

#### **F7.1 Earthing**

##### **F7.1.1 Design**

The earthing system shall be designed and installed in accordance with BS 7430:1998 and BS 7671:2008 in concurrence with IS 3043:1987.

The materials used and the method of installation shall be such as to ensure effective and reliable operation over a prolonged period under the conditions appertaining to the Site.

The earthing installation shall comprise earth electrode(s), main earthing terminal, earthing circuit protective conductors and equipotential bonding conductors.

The metalwork of all items of electrical plant, electrical system neutral points, power and auxiliary cable armouring and screens and extraneous metalwork including structural steelwork, pipework, fences and gates, shall unless otherwise specified, be connected to the earthing installation.

##### **F7.1.2 Earth electrodes**

The earth electrode installation shall be provided to suit the site ground conditions, which shall be as detailed elsewhere, or which shall be determined by site survey, as specified.

The earth electrode installation shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer and shall

comprise one of the following:

- (a) a system of interconnected driven rods;
- (b) a grid configuration of horizontal buried bare copper/MS/GS tapes or stranded cable;
- (c) a single or system of interconnected buried copper/MS plates;
- (d) other approved system to suit extreme ground conditions.

The earth electrode system shall be installed at least 1 metre below ground water level with full allowance made for seasonal variation in water level.

The electrode system shall, where possible, comprise the rod type incorporating copper/GS or copper-clad high-tensile low-carbon steel cored rods. Copper-clad type rods shall have a minimum copper thickness of 0.25mm which shall be molecularly bonded to the steel core. Rods shall have hardened tips and driving caps to prevent damage during installation.

Couplings shall be manufactured from aluminium bronze and shall have completely enclosed threads to prevent damage and corrosion.

Where soil conditions are very aggressive, solid copper earth rods shall be used.

Where multiple rods are installed, they should be separated by a distance of not less than their driven length. Bare copper/MS/GS tape or multi-stranded cable, buried at a minimum depth of 400mm, shall be used for the interconnection of rods. Each rod shall be provided with a non-ferrous clamp for the connection of the earthing conductor.

The connections to rod or alternative design electrodes shall be made in concrete or other approved material inspection chambers set flush with the finished ground level. The inspection chambers shall be permanently marked 'electrical earth'.

The resistance to earth of the earth electrode system shall be as specified.

### **F7.1.3 Conductors**

Earthing, circuit protective, and equipotential bonding conductors shall be high-conductivity copper tape/MS/GS tape or 1kV-grade PVC-insulated multi-stranded cable. The conductors shall be sized in accordance with the Reference Standard. PVC cable insulation shall be green and yellow. Cable lengths shall be continuous.

Where aggressive atmosphere may be present, the copper tape shall be tinned or PVC-covered.

Cable armouring and screens shall be bonded to earth at both ends unless otherwise specified. Earthing of instrumentation cable screens shall be as specified elsewhere. Cable armouring shall not be used as the only earth protective conductor.

The earthing conductor interconnecting the main earthing terminal and electrode shall be PVC-insulated copper/GS tape or multi-stranded cable.

#### **F7.1.4 Earthing terminal**

The main earthing terminal shall be mounted in an accessible location and shall provide facilities for connecting:

- (i) the earthing conductor(s) between the earthing terminal and electrode(s) or electricity supply company earth terminal;
- (ii) circuit-protective conductors between the earthing terminal and exposed conductive parts;
- (iii) the main equipotential bonding conductors between the earthing terminal and extraneous conductive parts; and
- (iv) the system neutral earthing conductor (where specified).

Facilities (i) and (ii) shall be removable with a tool to permit measurement and testing.

The earthing terminal shall comprise a terminal block or busbar on an insulated frame as appropriate. A label shall be provided inscribed 'main earth terminal'.

#### **F7.1.5 Installation**

The earthing installation shall be of robust construction and protected from mechanical damage and corrosion.

The circuit-protective conductors and equipotential bonding conductors shall be of the radial, grid or ring form as dictated by the plant layout. Joints in tape conductors shall be tinned rivetted and soldered, or brazed, or exothermically welded. Non-corrosive flux shall be used for soldered joints. Compression-type lugs shall be provided for the termination of earthing cables.

The conductors shall be secured to building structures, cable racks and trays using proprietary fixings. Protective, earthing or bonding conductors extending between buildings or to external plant shall comprise PVC-insulated cable direct-buried or installed in buried ducts.

The interconnection of conductors below ground to or forming part of the electrode system shall be by means of exothermic welding or brazing.

#### **F7.1.6 Earthing of extraneous metalwork**

##### **(a) Fences:**

Metallic fences, including plastic-covered chain-link fencing, associated metallic support posts, stays, gates and anti-climbing fittings, shall be earthed.

Metallic fences separated from the electrical earthing system and exposed and extraneous conductive parts connected to the electrical earthing system, by a distance of not less than 2m, shall be independently earthed.

Metallic fences which are situated within the area of the electrical earthing system or cannot be separated from it by a minimum distance of 2m, shall be bonded to the electrical earthing system. Additionally, a bare conductor shall be installed around the fence perimeter. The conductor shall be buried 0.5m deep and 1m outside the fence, and shall be bonded to the

fence at intervals not greater than 50m.

The earthing requirements for independently-earthed fences and for fences bonded to the electrical earthing system shall comply with BS 7430:1998.

**(b) Structural steelwork:**

All structural steelwork within the Site, including handrailing, ladders, walkways and the like, shall be bonded to the electrical earthing system.

**(c) Pipework:**

An equipotential bond shall be provided to all metal pipework at the point of entry into a building or chamber where electrical apparatus is installed. Electrical continuity across all pipe joints within the structure shall be ensured. Where pipework incorporates a compression coupling (such as a Viking-Johnson coupling), a bond shall be provided to any isolated section.

**F7.1.7 Instrumentation earthing system**

An instrumentation earthing system shall be provided throughout in accordance with the requirements of BS 6739:1986. The instrument earthing system shall be isolated from the main electrical earthing system except at their point of connection which shall be at the main earth terminal in the relevant process area.

Instrumentation earth cables shall be segregated from other power and earth system cables in order to reduce electrical interference on the instrument earthing system.

The instrument earthing system shall be used for the connection of any signal system zero-volt point and all communications and instrumentation cable screens. Cable screens shall be earthed at one end only. Instrument cable armours shall not be used as protective screens. Instrument cable armours shall be earthed to the electrical earth system at one end only.

Avoidance of earth loops shall be paramount in the design of the instrument earthing system.

Each instrumentation, control, communications and telemetry panel shall be provided with an:

- electrical system earth bar bonded to the metalwork of the panel and providing earth connections for all cable armours and power circuit protective conductors;
- instrumentation earth bar insulated from the panel metalwork for connection of signal system zero-volt connections and connection of all signal cable screens.

The design of the instrument earthing system shall be incorporated as part of design of the overall earthing system for the works.

**F7.2 Neutral earthing resistors**

Neutral earthing resistors shall comply with the relevant parts of IEC 60947-4-1:2000.

Earthing resistors shall be of the non-inductive grid resistance type.

Resistors shall be used for power transformer and generator winding star point earthing and their performance duty and rating factors, comprising line to neutral voltage, current and short



time factor and resistance values shall be as specified. Unless otherwise specified, resistance values shall be at 20°C with 10% design tolerance.

The resistor elements shall be of continuous non-corrodible chrome-aluminium steel alloy strip formed onto mica or ceramic-insulated stainless steel rods designed to permit free expansion and contraction under temperature variation. The resistance elements shall be assembled in tiers onto insulator-supported steel frames, and interconnected by bolted tinned or nickel-plated copper strip. The arrangement shall permit the disconnection and removal of individual resistor elements. Copper strip connections shall also be provided to the cable terminations.

The element alloy material shall have a temperature coefficient of less than 2% increase in resistance per 100°C rise over the operating temperature range.

The resistors shall be mounted in fabricated sheet-steel ventilated enclosures providing a minimum enclosure protection classification of IP23. Terminal facilities for main earthing cables and for auxiliary cables shall be by segregated integral enclosed cable boxes. Access to internal components shall be by bolt-fixed removable cover plates. The enclosure bases shall be totally closed and vermin-proof.

Enclosures for outdoor mounting shall be of hot-dipped galvanised or stainless steel. Internal mounted enclosures shall be painted to associated switchgear standards.

Facilities for mounting protection system equipment and integral or separately mounted earthing switchgear shall be as specified.

Eye bolt lifting facilities shall be provided.

### **F7.3 Lightning protection**

#### **F7.3.1 Design**

The lightning protection installation shall be designed and installed in accordance with BS 6651:1999 and as specified in concurrence with IS 2309:1989.

#### **F7.3.2 Materials**

Materials used for the manufacture of the component parts of lightning protection installations shall comply with BS 6651:1999 and IS 2309:1989.

Conductor material shall be bare or PVC-covered copper or aluminium tape or solid circular conductor or GS/MS tapes as specified. The colour of PVC-covered conductors shall be agreed with the Engineer.

Careful attention shall be given to the selection of materials to minimise the risk of corrosion, including galvanic corrosion.

#### **F7.3.3 Dimensions of component parts**

The dimensions of component parts shall be not less than those specified in BS 6651.

**F7.3.4 Fittings**

Fittings shall be mechanically robust and shall have a high degree of resistance to corrosion and erosion by the environment in which they are installed.

**F7.3.5 Metallic building fabric**

Metallic building fabric used for air terminations shall be electrically continuous. Comprehensive details of the methods to be used for ensuring electrical continuity and making connections to structural steelwork and down conductors shall be submitted for the approval of the Engineer.

**F7.3.6 Bonds and clamps**

Bonds shall be mechanically and electrically effective and shall be protected from corrosion.

Bonds to structural steelwork, reinforcing bars and pipes shall be made using proprietary clamps. The drilling of metallic building fabric to secure bonds shall not be carried out without the approval of the Engineer.

When the reinforcement in concrete structures is used for down conductors, the metal bars shall be interconnected, either by welding or by metal binding wire, to provide definite electrical continuity. The interconnection shall be provided for both vertical to vertical and horizontal to vertical bars. The external conductor shall be connected to the reinforcing bars via a proprietary non-ferrous built-in type bonding point. The bonding points to be cast into the structure shall be provided by the Contractor together with a drawing showing the required location.

**F7.3.7 Conductor fixings**

Conductors shall be fixed to the building structure using proprietary clips and holdfasts. The fixings shall be purpose-made for the conductor type used and shall allow for expansion.

Non-metallic clips shall be manufactured from high-grade polypropylene. The material shall be stabilised against degradation by sunlight and shall not become brittle at the minimum temperature at the location where installed.

No welding or drilling of structural steelwork or drilling or cutting of the outside building fabric for the attachment of fixings shall be carried out without the approval of the Engineer.

Fixings shall be securely attached to the building structure; mortar joints shall not be used.

**F7.3.8 Joints**

Joints in conductors shall be kept to a minimum and shall be mechanically and electrically effective. Joints shall be clamped, rivetted, bolted or welded. The overlap of conductors shall not be less than 50mm.

Contact surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned and coated with a suitable anti-corrosive

compound to inhibit oxidation. For bi-metallic joints, a separate abrasive shall be used to clean each metal.

Bi-metallic connectors shall be used for joints between two dissimilar metals.

Bi-metallic joints shall not be made at test joints or in the conductor between the test joint and the earth electrode.

### **F7.3.9 Test joints**

A test joint shall be provided in each down conductor in a convenient position.

The connection between the test joint and earth electrode shall be PVC-insulated copper/GS tape.

### **F7.3.10 Earth electrodes**

Earth electrodes shall normally comprise copper or copper-clad high-tensile low-carbon steel cored rods. Copper-clad type rods shall have a minimum copper thickness of 0.25mm which shall be molecularly bonded to the steel core. Rods shall have hardened tips and driving caps to prevent damage during installation.

Couplings shall be manufactured from aluminium bronze and shall have completely enclosed threads to prevent damage and corrosion.

Where soil conditions are very aggressive, solid copper earth rods shall be used.

Earth rods shall penetrate a minimum of one metre below ground water level. Due attention shall be given to seasonal variation in ground water level.

Where multiple rods are installed, they should be separated by a distance of not less than their driven length. Bare copper/MS/GS tape or multi-stranded cable, buried at a minimum depth of 400mm, shall be used for the interconnection of rods.

Each rod shall be provided with a non-ferrous clamp for the connection of the earthing conductor. The connection shall be made in a concrete or other approved material inspection chamber set flush with the finished ground level. The inspection chamber shall be permanently marked 'lightning protection earth'.

Where soil conditions make the use of rod type electrodes impractical or uneconomical, a grid configuration shall be used. The grid shall comprise horizontally buried bare copper/MS/GS tape or multi-stranded cable.

The resistance to earth of the earth electrode system shall be as stated in BS 6651:1999.

### **F7.3.11 Bonding to other services**

Unless otherwise specified, the lightning protection and electricity supply earth electrode systems shall be interconnected.

## **F8.0 CABLING INSTALLATIONS**

### **F8.1 Cabling — general requirements**

Cables shall be supplied from an approved manufacturer and, where possible, the same manufacturer shall be used for all cables and wires. Each drum or coil of cable shall be accompanied by a certificate stating the manufacturer's name, rating of cable, result and date of tests.

All cables shall be delivered with cable ends effectively sealed. When a cable is cut from a drum, both ends shall be immediately sealed to prevent ingress of moisture.

Cables shall be adequately rated for current-carrying capacity under normal and short-time fault conditions at the specified voltage.

Assessing the rating and cross section of any cable shall be in accordance with IEC 60287-1-1:2006 and shall take into account the following factors:

- (a) maximum voltage drop permissible;
- (b) type and magnitude of load;
- (c) fault level and duration related to circuit protection;
- (d) over-current setting of relays;
- (e) method of laying;
- (f) route length and disposition of cables;
- (g) ambient temperature, including ground thermal resistivity for buried cables.

Unless otherwise specified, cable sizing with respect to power system voltage depression shall be based on the following parameters.

Cable sizes in conjunction with electrical-plant operating characteristics shall ensure the maximum circuit volt drops are not greater than:

- main feeder cables to and between system switchboards at rated circuit current: 1%;
- feeder circuits from control switchgear and panels to terminal equipment at rated load current: 2%;
- the transient voltage depression at the started motor terminals is not greater than 10%;
- the transient voltage depression at the busbars of any power system switchboard does not exceed 5%.

Transient voltage drops for motor starting conditions shall include the dynamic loading of all running plant.

Cable schedules shall be submitted for approval detailing ratings, sizes, lengths, method of installation and function of all individual cables.

### **F8.2 Cables**

#### **F8.2.1 Cable conductors**

Cable conductors shall be plain annealed copper complying with BS 6360:1991.

Unless otherwise specified, low-voltage three-phase and neutral power cables shall not incorporate a reduced neutral conductor.

### **F8.2.2 Power cables**

Unless otherwise specified or approved, all power, control and instrumentation cables shall be galvanised steel wire or tape armoured with PVC overall sheath. Single-core power cables shall have non-magnetic armour of hard-drawn aluminium.

Cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE) insulated cables for rated voltages 600/1000V and 1900/3300V shall comply with BS 5467:1997. XLPE-insulated cables for rated voltages from 3800/6600V to 19000/33000V shall comply with BS 6622:2007.

PVC-insulated power cables for rated voltages of 600/1000V and 1900/3300V shall comply with BS 6346:1997.

Low smoke and fume (LSF) cables for rated voltages up to 1900/3300V shall comply with BS 6724:1997.

Low smoke and fume cables for rated voltages of 3800/6600V and 6350/11000V shall comply with BS 6622:2007 but shall have bedding and oversheath material complying with the LSF requirements of BS 6724:1997.

### **F8.2.3 Control cables**

Multi-core cables shall be of the PVC-insulated or LSF-type having a rated voltage 600/1000V. PVC-type cables shall comply with BS 6346:1997. LSF cables shall comply with BS 6724:1997.

### **F8.2.4 Instrumentation cables**

Instrumentation cables shall be of the polyethylene or PVC-insulated type rated voltage 300/500V complying with BS 5308-1:1986 and BS 5308-2:1986 as specified.

Unless otherwise specified, conductors shall be 24/0.2mm (0.75mm<sup>2</sup>) multi-strand type.

Individual and/or collective screens shall be provided in accordance with the recommendations of the associated equipment manufacturer.

LSF cables shall have bedding and oversheath material complying with the LSF requirements of BS 6724:1997.

### **F8.2.5 Telephone cables**

Cables for use with telephone systems and speech-band telemetry systems shall be of the solid polyethylene-insulated type rated voltage 110V ac / 150V dc and petroleum jelly filled complying with BS 3573:1990 'Specification for telecommunication distribution cables'. The minimum conductor diameter shall be 0.9mm. A minimum of 10 pairs shall be provided.

Telephone cables for use in office and administration area shall be provided in accordance with the local national standards, and shall be installed in trunking systems.

### **F8.2.6 Cables for conduit and trunking wiring systems**

Cables shall be single-core PVC-insulated non-sheathed type complying with BS 6004:2000 or LSF-type complying with BS 7211:1998 as specified.

The minimum conductor size shall be 1.5mm<sup>2</sup> for lighting circuits and 2.5mm<sup>2</sup> for socket outlet and heater circuits.

### **F8.2.7 Mineral insulated cables**

Mineral insulated copper sheathed cables shall comply with BS 6207-3:2001. Unless otherwise specified, mineral insulated cables shall be provided with a standard PVC covering, coloured orange.

Voltage-surge suppressors shall be fitted to all cables associated with inductive loads.

### **F8.2.8 Use of proprietary cable types**

Where a proprietary cable type is required for a particular item of equipment, the Contractor shall submit a detailed specification and application of the cable type to the Engineer for consent. Where the cable is to be installed in outdoors, in plant areas, in ducts or clipped direct or on cable tray, the cable shall be armoured and provided with an overall PVC sheath.

## **F8.3 Cable glands, terminations and joints**

### **F8.3.1 Cable glands**

Cable glands shall comply with BS EN 50262:1999 and unless otherwise specified, shall be manufactured from brass. Glands for use with aluminium armoured cables shall have zinc or nickel plated armour clamp and spigot.

Glands for single-core armoured cables and armoured instrumentation cables shall be earthed at the source end only and insulated from earthed metalwork with facilities for shorting at the other end.

Glands for armoured cables shall be fitted with earth tags.

Cable glands for use outdoors shall have cable inner and outer sheath seals. Glands for indoor use shall have a cable outer sheath seal.

Mineral insulated cables shall be terminated using proprietary termination kits comprising moisture seal, insulating sleeving and gland. The type of seal shall be compatible with the continuous operating temperature of the cable. The termination kit and cable shall be of the same manufacture.

Exposed cable glands, that is those not contained within an enclosure, shall be fitted with PVC shrouds.

### **F8.3.2 Cable termination, joints, sleeves and tape - general**

The Contractor shall employ personnel who are fully-qualified and competent for the types of joints and terminations to be made. Proof of competence for all personnel shall be submitted to the Engineer before any jointing or termination work commences.

The Contractor shall provide evidence to the Engineer that the materials or kits to be used for jointing and termination are suitable for the type of cable to be jointed or terminated.

Full details of jointing and terminating arrangements supported by manufacturers' literature shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Engineer prior to commencement of cable installation.

Cables shall not be cut or uncapped until the jointing or termination is ready to start. Cable ends shall be free from moisture.

Jointing and termination shall, wherever practical, be completed without interruption. During the work all reasonable precautions shall be taken to prevent damage and ingress of moisture and impurities.

Where circumstances prevent the completion of jointing and termination work, the cable end or ends shall be sealed.

Where cores need to be crossed to preserve phasing, a cross core joint of adequate dimensions to incorporate the cores, shall be used. Where numbered cores are jointed to coloured cores, the system adopted shall be consistent throughout all cable runs and, on sites with existing installations, consistent with the system already in use.

For joints in armoured cables, a bonding conductor of sufficient size to withstand the system earth fault current, shall be connected across the armouring. A split ferrule shall be placed under the armouring to prevent deformation of the cable by the clamp.

### **F8.3.3 Terminations**

Cables shall be terminated in an unfilled type cable box or air insulated enclosure using a mechanical type gland. A proprietary heat-shrink type termination kit shall be used for terminating high-voltage cables.

Conductor terminations shall be by means of compression fittings or mechanical clamps.

Aluminium conductors shall not be clamped in pinch-screw type tunnel terminals unless the terminal is certified for such use.

Cable sockets shall be of the correct size for the conductor. Oversize sockets will not be accepted.

Compression connectors and associated dies for the compression tool shall be the correct type and size. The tool shall be so designed that the correct compression force must be applied before it can be released.

### **F8.3.4 Joints**

Unless otherwise specified, joints for direct burial in the ground shall be of the cast-resin type and those located in chambers or indoor areas shall be of the proprietary heat-shrink type. Joints for 1.1kV grade cables shall comply with BS 6910-1:1988.

Resin-based compounds shall, as far as is reasonably practicable, be safe and without risk to health. Each pack shall include warnings as to any hazards in use, such as dermatitic or toxic properties, with details of the precautions which the user must take and package disposal instructions.

### **F8.3.5 Sleeves**

Sleeves shall be of the shrink type. They shall provide sufficient thickness of insulation to suit the particular application.

### **F8.3.6 Tape**

Insulating tape used in joints and terminations shall be compatible with, and have a temperature rating and insulating property not less than, the cable insulation, and shall comply with approved standards. Pressure-sensitive adhesive tapes shall comply with BS 3924:1978. All tapes shall be stored in sealed containers until required.

## **F8.4 Cable installation**

### **F8.4.1 Cable installation - general**

To avoid the risk of damage, cables having PVC insulation and/or sheathing shall not be handled or installed if both they and the ambient temperature is below 0°C. For LSF cables, the temperature may be -10°C. Cables shall have been kept at or above the stated minimum temperature for at least 24 hours immediately prior to installation; any special measures to achieve this shall be approved by the Engineer.

Care shall be taken to prevent damage to the cable oversheath during installation. At the discretion of the Engineer, minor damage may be repaired. Full details of the repair procedure shall be provided for approval. In the case of major oversheath damage, the Engineer reserves the right to have the whole section of the cable replaced at no cost to the Employers.

Cables shall not be bent during installation to a radius less than that recommended by the cable manufacturer. Where practical, larger radii shall be used.

Cable drums shall be unloaded carefully by means of either a crane or ramp. Cable drums shall not be dropped onto the ground. Cable drums unloaded using ramps shall be guided by holding ropes with the aid of winches or block and tackle.

Cable drums shall be supported on axles and axle stands during the unwinding operation. Under no circumstances shall cables be unwound from a drum-laying flat. Drums shall be



turned during unwinding to prevent the cable being subjected to damaging tensile stresses.

Cables shall be pulled using a pulling eye or stocking. Where cables are supported on rollers, they shall be spaced to prevent the cable being dragged over the ground or other surfaces which could cause damage to the oversheath or other corrosion protection.

Where cables are pulled by a winch, the following measures shall be taken:

- (a) a continuous check shall be carried to ensure the tensile stress on the cable does not exceed the permissible value;
- (b) a shearing pin or other rupturing device to interrupt the pulling if the maximum permissible tensile stress is exceeded shall be provided at the winch.

#### **F8.4.2 Arrangement of single-core cables in three-phase systems**

Three-phase cable systems comprising two or more single-core cables per phase shall be arranged in three-phase, that is red, yellow and blue, groups. This is to equalise, as far as practicable, mutual inductance. The three-phase groups may be in trefoil or flat formation as dictated by the cable system design. Cables shall not be arranged in groups comprising the same phase.

#### **F8.4.3 Cable spacing**

Unless otherwise specified, the minimum space between cables shall be as follows:

High-voltage:	50mm;
Low-voltage:	Touching unless current rating considerations dictate otherwise;
High and low-voltage:	300mm;
High-voltage and control:	300mm;
Low-voltage and control:	150mm;
High-voltage and instrumentation telephone:	300mm;
Low-voltage and instrumentation telephone:	150mm;
Control:	Nil.

Where cables are installed in close proximity to or cross those of authorities such as telecommunication, electricity supply and railway, spacing shall comply with the regulations of those authorities.

#### **F8.4.4 Cable and core identification**

All cables shall be permanently identified at each end and at entry and exit points of ducts. Identification shall be by means of approved cable markers with semi-rigid black PVC carrier strip which shall be fixed axially by means of two PVC straps or other marker type approved by the Engineer.

On rotating plant and transformers where, to achieve the required direction of rotation or phasing, it is not possible to connect the phase cores to the appropriate terminals, additional core ferrules shall be fitted to identify each core with the terminal to which it is connected.

Control cables shall have individual cores identified by means of suitable permanent ferrules

bearing the same number at both ends. Core identification shall occur at every point of termination using an approved system of ferrule markers. The size of the ferrule markers shall be such as to match the overall diameter of conductor plus insulation. Numbering shall read away from the termination on all cores.

#### **F8.4.5 Installation in buildings**

Surface-run cables shall be secured by cleats, installed on trays or ladders, or installed in conduit or trunking.

Surface-run cables, trays, ladders, conduits and trunking shall be neatly installed vertical, horizontal and parallel to walls, beams or other structural members.

Conduit systems concealed by wall finishes shall be installed vertical and horizontal.

Cables in structural trenches shall be secured to the trench side by cleats or installed on trays as applicable.

Cables shall be installed in accordance with the recommendation of the cable manufacturer and/or BS 7671:2008.

Cables on tray and ladder systems shall be installed to minimise crossovers.

The spacing of fixings shall be in accordance with BS 7671. The method of securing fixings shall be by means of non-corrodible screws.

Plastic self-locking cable ties shall be as the 'Insulok' range manufactured by Hellermann Insuloid or similar.

Plastic cable ties for outdoor use shall be resistant to ultra-violet degradation. Cable ties for use with LSF cables shall be manufactured from flame-retardant material.

Plastic ties for use with cable tray shall be of the two-part type having lugs for retention behind the tray slot.

Plastic cable ties shall not be used for fixing groups of single-core cables forming a three-phase circuit. Proprietary cable cleats shall be used for this purpose.

All cables installed on ladder systems shall be fixed by means of proprietary cleats.

Cable cleats shall be manufactured from materials which shall have no deleterious effect on cable sheaths. Cleats for single-core cables carrying alternating current shall be manufactured from non-magnetic material. Trefoil, three-way flat, two-way or single-way cleats shall be used as required by the cabling system design.

Cleating arrangements for single-core cables shall be of sufficient strength to withstand short-circuit forces.

Unless otherwise specified or approved, where several cables are terminated in an enclosure, they shall approach the enclosure from a common direction and shall be terminated in a neat

and systematic manner.

Cables shall be installed not less than 150mm from water service pipework and below heating and hot water pipework. Cables and chemical pipework shall not be installed in the same trench or service duct unless approved by the Engineer.

Cable installations crossing structural expansion and settlement joints shall have provision for movement. Conduits shall have a flexible section. Trunking shall be fitted with purpose-made expansion couplings.

## **F8.5 Cable systems**

### **F8.5.1 Conduit**

Conduit systems shall be of the steel or plastic type as specified.

Steel conduit and fittings shall comply with BS 4568-1:1970 and BS EN 50086-1:1994, shall be screwed and hot-dip zinc coated inside and outside. The nominal size of conduit shall be not less than 20mm.

The ends of conduits which are liable to be left open for any length of time during building work shall be plugged to prevent the ingress of dirt and covers shall be fitted on all boxes.

No holes shall be drilled through any structure without prior approval.

Damaged galvanising shall be cleaned and immediately painted with two coats of an approved zinc-based paint. This treatment shall be carried out as the work proceeds.

Non-metallic conduit and fittings shall be of the rigid PVC heavy-duty type complying with BS EN 50086-2-1:1996 and BS 4607-1:1984.

Joints into couplers, slip-type bends and spouted fittings shall be made using silicone grease or a permanent solvent. Silicone grease shall be used for expansion couplings.

Expansion couplings shall be fitted in surface installations at intervals as recommended by the manufacturer.

PVC conduit shall not be installed in areas that receive direct sunlight.

The installation of metallic and non-metallic conduit systems shall be carried out in accordance with BS 7671:2008.

### **F8.5.2 Trunking**

Trunking shall be manufactured from hot-dip zinc-coated steel or heavy-duty plastic as specified complying with BS 4678-1:1971 and BS 4678-4:1982.

When fitted, partitions shall be of the same material as the trunking. The gap between the partitions and the trunking cover shall be a minimum to ensure the segregation of circuits is maintained.

Trunking shall be installed using factory-made accessories. Site-fabricated fittings will not be accepted.

Blind ends of trunking runs for future extensions shall be fitted with removable covers.

Trunking with covers on the side or bottom shall be fitted with removable cable-retaining straps at intervals not exceeding 1000mm.

Where trunking runs vertically, cables shall be supported at intervals not exceeding 5m. The method of support shall allow for future easy removal or addition of cables and shall be subject to approval.

Bonding links shall be provided at each joint of steel trunking which shall be secured by screws, shakeproof washers and nuts. The bonding link shall make contact with the metal of the trunking or fitting, and continuity shall not depend on contact through screws nor on the removal of a paint finish.

Factory-made connectors shall be used at joints.

Non-flammable fire barriers shall be inserted where the trunking passes through walls or floors. Conduit connections to trunking shall be made by flanged couplings and male bushes.

Trunking shall be supported at intervals not greater than 2m horizontally or 2.5m vertically.

All cut or drilled edges in steel trunking shall be treated with an approved zinc-based paint.

### **F8.5.3 Tray**

Cable tray shall be heavy-duty hot-dip galvanised steel, stainless steel or glass reinforced plastic as specified. Plastic tray shall be heavy duty with return flanges.

Wherever possible, galvanised steel cable trays shall be installed in full lengths without cutting. Cut edges shall be treated with an approved zinc-based paint.

Cable trays shall be installed using proprietary accessories and support systems.

Plastic tray and accessories shall be approved by the Engineer.

All cables shall be firmly secured to the tray using approved purpose-made fixings.

Cable tray shall be mounted not less than 25mm from the face of the structure.

### **F8.5.4 Ladder**

Cable ladders shall be heavy-duty hot-dip galvanised steel, stainless steel or glass reinforced plastic as specified.

Wherever possible, galvanised steel cable ladders shall be installed in full lengths without cutting. Cut edges of steel ladders shall be treated with an approved zinc-based paint.

Cable ladders shall be installed using proprietary accessories and support systems.

All cables shall be firmly secured to ladders using approved purpose-made fixings.

#### **F8.5.5 Installation directly in the ground**

Unless otherwise specified, the minimum cover for cables shall be as follows:

- low-voltage: 500mm;
- control and instrumentation: 500mm;
- high-voltage: 800mm.

Cables shall be laid on a minimum thickness of 75mm soft fill or sand extending the full width of the trench. After laying, cables shall be covered with a further layer of soft fill or sand of minimum thickness 75mm. All cable bedding shall be well-compacted; power rammers shall not be used for this purpose.

Where more than one horizontal layer of cables is laid, the level of the upper layer shall be gauged from the bottom of the trench and marked on the side of the trench at regular intervals to ensure the correct vertical separation is maintained.

Where high-voltage and low-voltage cables are laid in the same trench, the former shall be laid at the bottom and covered with bedding material and protective tiles. The low-voltage cables shall be then laid on a further layer of bedding material at the required separation distance.

During cable laying, sharp metal tools shall not be used in the trench or placed in such a position that they may fall into the trench.

Cables shall only cross other cables at junctions at which point clearances between the cables shall be maintained.

#### **F8.5.6 Installation in ducts**

Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer, power, control and instrumentation cables shall not be installed in the same duct.

Cables shall, where necessary, be lubricated to facilitate drawing in. The lubricant used shall have no deleterious effect on the cables. Where cables leave duct ends to enter a trench, a permanent support shall be provided to reduce the possibility of damage to cables due to ground settlement.

#### **F8.5.7 Excavation of cable trenches**

The exact route of each trench shall be approved by the Engineer before excavation starts. Trenches shall be kept as straight as possible and shall be excavated in accordance with BS 6031:1981.

Excavated trenches shall be kept free of water and protected against damage or collapse. All necessary sheeting, timbering, strutting and shoring shall be supplied, erected and subsequently removed to ensure the safety of persons and the protection of structures, buildings, roads, sewers and other services from damage.

The bottom of all trenches shall be graded evenly and cleared of loose stones. Where the level

of the trench bottom has to change, the slope shall be gradual and shall not exceed 1 in 12.

After cable installation, trenches shall be backfilled in layers, and each layer shall be compacted. The first two layers shall be 100mm deep and shall be compacted by hand. The remaining layers shall not be greater than 200mm deep and power compacting may be used. Where applicable, top soil and turf shall be replaced. Damaged road, hardstanding and paved areas shall be reinstated to an approved standard.

#### **F8.5.8 Cable ducts**

Cable ducts shall be manufactured from polyethylene and shall have an internal diameter as specified. Unless otherwise specified, duct colours shall be as follows:

- electric cables: black;
- telecommunication cables: grey or white;

Proprietary couplings, bends and other accessories shall be used.

#### **F8.5.9 Installation of cable ducts**

The route of all ducts shall be approved by the Engineer and shall be installed and jointed in accordance with the instructions or recommendations of the manufacturer.

Ducts installed under roads, hardstandings and paved areas shall extend 1000mm beyond the boundary.

The formation and spacing of ducts for power and auxiliary cables shall be as specified or agreed with the Engineer.

Where site conditions require a surround of concrete, the thickness shall be not less than 100mm.

After installation, all ducts shall be checked for alignment and the ends temporarily, but effectively, sealed to minimise the risk of ingress of water, other materials and vermin.

A polypropylene draw rope with a 6kN breaking strain shall be installed in each duct.

Draw chambers shall be provided at changes in duct direction and at intervals along the duct run. The size and spacing of the chambers shall be determined by cable minimum bending radii and permitted maximum pulling forces.

#### **F8.5.10 Cable-protection tiles and warning tapes**

Cable tiles shall be reinforced concrete or clayware complying with BS 2484:1985. Cable tiles manufactured from other materials shall not be used without prior approval of the Engineer.

The width of the tile or tiles shall provide a minimum of 50mm overlap on each side of a cable or group of cables. If more than one tile is used for covering a group of cables, the tile width shall be such that the longitudinal joint between tiles is above the space between the cables and not immediately above a cable.

Cable tiles shall be provided for all high-voltage cables and for other cables when specified.

Tiles shall be laid directly on the cable-bedding material.

A warning tape shall be placed above individual or groups of cables and cable ducts. The tape shall be laid at a depth of 300mm below the finished surface level or as otherwise approved by the Engineer. For groups of cables or ducts where it is impractical to install individual tapes, a single tape shall be installed above the each outer cable or duct unless otherwise instructed by the Engineer.

Warning tapes shall be of polythene not less than 150mm wide and 0.1mm thick and shall incorporate a metal foil or braid. They shall be yellow in colour and shall be continuously marked 'caution — electric cable below', or similar, in black letters not less than 30mm high.

#### **F8.5.11 Marking of buried cables and joints**

The route of buried cables shall be permanently identified by reinforced precast concrete marker posts or blocks of an approved type with impressed characters 'HV cable' or 'LV cable' as appropriate.

The position of buried cable joints shall be permanently identified by reinforced precast concrete marker posts or blocks of an approved type with impressed characters 'HV cable joint' or 'LV cable joint' as appropriate.

Cable marker posts and blocks shall be located on the precise line of the cable at regular intervals not exceeding 50m, at changes in direction and at points of entry into buildings. Marker blocks shall be installed flush with the finished ground level.

#### **F8.5.12 Sealing of cable entries into buildings**

Where cables pass through walls below ground level, the point of entry shall be sealed against the ingress of water by means of silicon foam or proprietary cable-transit system.

#### **F8.5.13 Obstructions**

When, in the course of the Works, obstructions are encountered which necessitate diversion of existing service installations, other underground works, alterations to buildings or foundations or when conditions require the adoption of a special form of trench or duct system, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Engineer, who will instruct the Contractor in writing of the action to be taken.

### **F9.0 BUILDING SERVICES**

#### **F9.1 Building and external services — power distribution**

##### **F9.1.1 Design**

Building services installations shall be designed and installed in accordance with Indian Electricity Rules and the Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers (CIBSE) Guide, BS 7671:2008 in concurrence with IS 732:1989.

##### **F9.1.2 Distribution boards**

Distribution fuse boards and miniature circuit breaker boards, herein referred to as distribution boards, shall comply with BS EN 60439-1:1999.

Distribution board enclosures shall be fabricated from heavy-gauge sheet steel with an all-welded construction. Exterior edges and corners shall be rounded to give a smooth overall appearance. Assembly bolts, screws or rivets shall not be visible from the front. Doors shall be lockable.

Distribution boards shall have a minimum degree of protection IP31 to BS EN 60529:1992 when located in clean and dry rooms. The protection classification for distribution boards located in other indoor locations shall be IP54. For outdoor locations, the degree of protection shall be not less than IPW55.

Distribution boards shall be fitted with removable top and bottom undrilled gland plates, each with a brass terminal stud.

Phase, neutral and earth busbars shall be provided, each clearly identified.

The phase busbars shall be fully insulated. The busbar current rating shall be not less than the sum of the maximum rated currents of the outgoing ways.

The neutral busbar shall have a terminal for each outgoing circuit.

The earth busbar shall be directly connected to the earth terminal without dependance on the exposed conductive parts of the enclosure. The earth busbar shall have a terminal for each outgoing circuit.

Each outgoing circuit including spare ways shall be controlled by a miniature circuit breaker as specified.

Outgoing circuit terminations shall be shrouded and covers shall be fitted over all live parts to prevent accidental contact. Incoming supply terminals, including the cable socket, shall be enclosed in an insulating housing which shall extend over the cable insulation. Warning labels shall be fitted to all removable covers.

Unless otherwise specified, distribution boards shall be fitted with a switch disconnecter complying with IEC 60947-3:1999 for isolation of the incoming supply. For three-phase distribution boards, the switch disconnecter shall be four-pole. For single-phase ac and dc distribution boards, the switch disconnecter shall be two-pole.

Outgoing circuits shall be clearly identified. Neutral and earth busbar terminals shall be identified as their respective outgoing way. Embossed plastic and paper labels will not be accepted.

A circuit identification chart in a clear and durable plastic wallet shall be mounted on the inside of the door.

Distribution boards shall be fitted with an identification label manufactured from white-black-white laminated plastic or rear-engraved perspex as specified. The label shall lay flat to the surface and shall be secured by non-rusting screws.



Danger and warning labels shall comply with BS 5499-5:2002 in concurrence with IS 9457:1980.

#### **F9.1.3 Bulk switching contactors**

Bulk switching contactors for the control of lighting and heating loads shall be of the electromagnetic type complying with IEC 60947- 4-3:1999. The contactors shall be rated for uninterrupted duty and shall have a utilisation category compatible with the type of load being controlled.

Contactors shall be double-pole for single-phase ac and dc and four-pole for three-phase loads. Enclosure construction shall be as specified for distribution boards.

#### **F9.1.4 Low and extra low voltage supply transformers**

Low-voltage and extra-low-voltage supply transformers shall comply with BS EN 60742:1996 and shall, unless otherwise specified, be of the single-phase type. Transformers shall be supplied complete with fixing bracket.

The rated output and voltage shall be as specified.

#### **F9.1.5 Electrical earth proving and monitoring units**

Where supplies are taken to portable tools or appliances at 240/415V, the supply point shall incorporate electrical earth proving and monitoring complying with BS 4444:1989. The supply point shall also incorporate residual-current protection. The residual-current circuit breaker shall comply with BS EN 61008-1:2004 and BS EN 61008-2-1:1995.

The plug and socket-outlet shall comply with IS/IEC 309-2:1989 and shall incorporate pilot contacts.

#### **F9.1.6 Solar time switches**

Solar time switches shall be of the synchronous motor wound clockwork type with a 30-hour spring reserve.

The solar dial shall have a gearing to suit the latitude and longitude of the site and shall incorporate facilities for setting the month and day of the month.

Dial settings shall be with respect to sunset and sunrise within a range of +/-1 hour and facilities shall be provided for an 'off' period from midnight +/-1 hour to 6 am +/-1 hour to be selected.

The time switch shall incorporate a test on/off switch which shall not interfere with the time clock and auto-winding mechanism.

#### **F9.1.7 Building services wiring**

Unless otherwise specified, internal services wiring shall be carried out in heavy-duty hot-dipped galvanised steel conduit and trunking incorporating 750V grade, single-core PVC-

insulated cable. Wiring installation shall comply with the provisions of IS 732:1989 and SP 30:1985-National Electrical Code.

Wiring shall be carried out on the looping-in system. No joints other than at looping-in points will be allowed.

Cable sizes shall be not less than 1.5mm<sup>2</sup> for lighting circuits and 2.5mm<sup>2</sup> for socket outlets, heating and small power circuits.

Conduit systems shall be surface or buried within building plaster/screed finishes as specified.

External services shall be cabled in multi-core PVC-insulated armoured cable, surface-run on building structures and steelwork or direct-buried as appropriate.

## **F9.2 Building services — lighting**

### **F9.2.1 General requirements**

The building internal lighting design shall take into account:

- the operating environment;
- the type and style of architectural finish;
- the activities to be performed in the areas;
- access for equipment maintenance;
- operating life.

The minimum service illumination levels shall comply with the minimum recommendations of the CIBSE Code for the appropriate building area and operational function, or as otherwise specified. Illumination levels shall apply to floor levels.

In no case shall the illumination be below that necessary to perform work or other essential activity in any particular location.

In areas housing rotating machinery, lighting shall be arranged on multiple-phase circuits to prevent stroboscopic effects.

Where adjacent luminaires are connected to different phases of the supply, a label shall be fitted internally, warning of the presence of the phase-to-phase voltage.

### **F9.2.2 General-purpose luminaires**

Luminaires shall be of the fluorescent, tungsten or gas-discharge type as specified, and shall comply with BS EN 60598-1:2000.

General-purpose fluorescent luminaires shall be manufactured from zinc-coated sheet steel of minimum thickness 0.7mm with white epoxy polyester powder or equivalent finish. Luminaires shall be fitted with a trough reflector or prismatic diffuser as specified.

Luminaires for installation in clean and dry areas shall have a minimum degree of protection IP20 (without a diffuser) and IP40 (with a diffuser) to BS EN 60529:1992.

Luminaires for use in a corrosive environment shall have a glass reinforced plastic body with a prismatic acrylic or polycarbonate diffuser. The degree of protection shall be IP65 to BS EN 60529:1992. Covers shall be sealed to the body with a neoprene gasket and shall be secured using stainless steel fixing catches. The catches shall be hinged to the body.

Bulkhead luminaires shall be of the heavy-duty type and shall have a diecast corrosion-resistant aluminium body and front frame with epoxy polyester powder or equivalent finish, and prismatic cover. Covers fitted to luminaires located outdoors shall be impact-resistant polycarbonate. The cover shall be sealed to the body with a silicon rubber gasket and shall be secured using stainless steel captive screws. Retaining hinges shall be stainless steel.

Bulkhead luminaires for indoor location shall have a minimum degree of protection IP54 and for outdoor location IP65 to BS EN 60529:1992.

Floodlighting luminaires shall be of similar construction to the bulkhead luminaires except they shall be fitted with a clear toughened glass panel. Floodlighting luminaires shall be complete with high-purity anodised aluminium reflector and galvanised steel mounting bracket. Reflector characteristics shall be selected to suit the floodlight application.

Fluorescent luminaires shall be of the switch-start type unless otherwise specified.

### **F9.2.3 Emergency lighting luminaires**

Unless otherwise specified, emergency lighting luminaires shall be of the self-contained type complying with BS 4533-102.1:1990 and shall incorporate a fluorescent lamp. The rated duration of emergency lighting luminaires shall be 3 hours.

Exit-type emergency luminaires shall be of the maintained type.

### **F9.2.4 Luminaires For hazardous areas**

Luminaires for location in Zone 1 and Zone 2 hazardous areas shall comply with BS EN 50014:1998. The Apparatus Group and Temperature Class shall be as specified.

### **F9.2.5 Lamps**

Tungsten filament lamps shall comply with BS EN 60064:1995+A4:2007 and BS EN 60432-1:2000 and shall have a minimum rated average life of 2000 hours. Tungsten lamps shall have a reinforced internal construction to provide increased resistance to filament breakage caused by jolts and vibration. Lamps for special applications shall be as specified.

Tungsten lamps rated up to and including 150W shall be fitted with a bayonet-type lamp cap. For lamp wattage above 150W, the lamp cap shall be of the Edison-screw type. Lamp caps shall comply with BS EN 60061-1:1997 in concurrence with IS 6701:1985.

Energy-saving fluorescent lamps used as a direct replacement for tungsten filament lamps shall have integral controlgear and a minimum rated average life of 8000 hours.

Fluorescent lamps shall comply with BS 1853-2:1995 in concurrence with IS 2418-Part1:1977 and shall have caps of the bi-pin type. Unless otherwise specified, lamps for installation in industrial areas shall have a correlated colour temperature of 3500K (white appearance) and

for other areas shall have a correlated colour temperature of 3000K (warm appearance). The minimum rated average lamp life shall be 3000 hours.

Mercury discharge lamps shall comply with IEC 60188:2001.

#### **F9.2.6 Ceiling roses**

Ceiling roses shall be of insulating material having ignitability characteristic 'P' as specified in ISO 5657:1986. Extension flanges shall be fitted to all surface mounted ceiling roses where the wiring installation is concealed in the building fabric.

Where plug-in connections are specified for luminaires, 2A three-pin outlets and plugs shall be provided which shall be suitable for mounting on to a circular conduit box. When specified, the plug shall be retained in the socket by means of a locking ring.

#### **F9.2.7 Pendants and chain suspensions**

A plain pendant shall comprise a ceiling rose, flexible cord and lampholder. Unless otherwise specified, the flexible cord shall be 0.75mm<sup>2</sup> and the insulation shall be suitable for a maximum operating temperature of 85°C. Where the lampholder has a metal exterior, the flexible cable shall include a protective conductor which shall be connected to the earth terminal of the lampholder and ceiling rose.

A tube pendant shall comprise a ball and socket cover to fit a circular conduit box and steel conduit not less than 20mm diameter. At the conduit entry to the luminaire a backnut shall be used.

A chain suspension shall comprise a hook cover fixed to a circular conduit box and a chain having a load carrying capacity not less than twice the weight of the luminaire.

#### **F9.2.8 Supports and fixings**

Where fluorescent luminaires 1200mm or more in length are supported directly by the conduit system they shall be fixed to two circular conduit boxes both of which shall form an integral part of the conduit system.

Where the weight of the luminaire is supported by a conduit box or trunking, the fixing of the conduit box or trunking shall be adequate for the purpose.

Luminaires fitted with tungsten filament lamps and having metal backplates shall not be fixed directly to a conduit box in which a thermoplastic material is the principal load-bearing member.

Support of luminaires from cable trunking shall be by means of proprietary clamps or brackets.

Where luminaires are supported from the structure other than by the conduit or trunking system, they shall be fixed by approved purpose-made clamps, bolts, washers and nuts, expanding anchors or proprietary wall plugs and non-ferrous screws as appropriate.

Luminaires mounted on or recessed into suspended ceilings shall be independently supported.

### **F9.2.9 Wiring connections**

Where luminaires, other than tubular fluorescent, are fixed directly to circular conduit boxes or are supported by pendants or chains, the final circuit wiring shall terminate at a terminal block in the conduit box.

Where fluorescent tube luminaires are fixed directly to circular conduit boxes, the final circuit wiring may be terminated within the luminaire. The wiring shall enter each luminaire at the conduit entry nearest to the terminal block and, where a loop-in wiring system is used, leave by the same entry. Wiring shall not pass through the luminaire.

Where luminaires are mounted on or recessed into a suspended ceiling, connection shall be by flexible cord from a plug-in ceiling rose unless otherwise specified. The plug-in ceiling rose shall be located not more than 500mm from the access in the ceiling and shall be firmly fixed.

Where high-bay discharge luminaires are suspended from the structural ceiling, the connection between the fitting and fixed wiring shall be by plug and socket.

Cables and flexible cords for final connections to luminaires shall be suitable for the operating temperature of the luminaire. Flexible cords for chain suspensions shall have a white sheath.

Cables and cords passing close to a ballast within a luminaire shall be suitable for the operating temperature of the ballast.

Where adjacent luminaires are connected to different phases of the supply, a label shall be fitted internally, warning of the presence of the phase-to-phase voltage.

A protective conductor shall connect the earth terminal of each luminaire to an earth terminal incorporated in the adjacent conduit box. Where the final connection is by flexible cord, the protective conductor shall be integral with the cord.

## **F9.3 Building and external services — roadway lighting**

### **F9.3.1 Columns**

Roadway lighting columns shall be constructed and installed in accordance with BS 5649-2:1978. The base compartment door/cover shall be fitted with a tamper-proof fastening.

Columns shall have bolted base mounting plates for installation on concrete foundation blocks which shall incorporate bottom-entry cable ducts.

Columns shall be complete with baseboard, fuse unit and wiring between the fuse unit and luminaire.

The fuse unit shall have a non-hygroscopic plastic case designed to prevent the ingress of moisture and condensation, integral double-entry cable termination chamber with detachable front cover and enclosed-type fuse complying with IEC 60269-1:1998.

### **F9.3.2 Lanterns**

All lanterns shall be of the high-pressure mercury or sodium type fitted with high-efficiency lamps and complete with integral controlgear.

## **F9.4 Building services — sockets and switches**

### **F9.4.1 Socket-outlets and couplers**

Commercial-type socket-outlets shall comply with BS 1363-2:1995 and BS1363-3:1989 in concurrence with IS 1293:1988, and shall be supplied complete with boxes and fixing screws. Socket outlets shall be white plastic or metalclad pattern according to the installation area and as specified.

Socket-outlets shall be of the flush-mounting type in plastered and tiled areas. In all other areas, socket-outlets shall be of the surface-mounting type.

Industrial pattern socket-outlets and couplers shall comply with IS/IEC 309-1:1988 and IS/IEC 309-2:1989. Industrial-type switched socket-outlets shall be mechanically interlocked to prevent the plug being inserted or withdrawn unless the switch is in the 'off' position. It shall not be possible for the switch to be moved to the 'on' position unless the plug is completely inserted.

Socket-outlets for indoor location in process or damp areas shall have a minimum degree of protection IP55 to BS EN 60529:1992. For outdoor locations, the degree of protection shall be not less than IP65.

Socket-outlets for locations in chemical-handling areas shall have plastic enclosures resistant to the particular chemical.

In office and control-room areas, socket-outlets shall be installed at 0.5m above floor level. In plant areas, socket-outlets shall be installed at 1.2m above floor level. The height of socket-outlets shall only be changed with the approval of the Engineer.

Residual-current circuit breakers fitted to socket-outlets shall comply with BS EN 61008-1:2004 and BS EN 61008-2:1995 and shall have a tripping sensitivity of 30mA with an operating time not exceeding 30ms.

### **F9.4.2 Switches**

Switches shall comply with BS EN 60669-1:2000 in concurrence with IS 3854:1997 and shall be supplied complete with box, cover plate and fixing screws. Switches shall be white plastic or metalclad type according to the installation area and as specified.

At multi-switch positions for lighting, the switches shall be contained in multi-gang boxes.

Multi-phase switch assemblies shall be phase-segregated and a separate cover shall be fitted over each phase section. The phase shall be marked on the covers and a label warning of the presence of a three-phase supply shall be fitted.

Switches shall be of the flush-mounting type in plastered and tiled areas. In all other areas, switches shall be of the surface-mounting type.

External lighting switches shall have rotary switch action and, unless otherwise specified, a hot-dipped galvanised cast-iron enclosure with tapped spouted entry.

Switches for indoor locations in process or damp areas shall have a minimum degree of protection IP55 to BS EN 60529:1992. For outdoor locations, the degree of protection shall be not less than IP65.

Switches for locations in chemical-handling areas shall have plastic enclosures resistant to the particular chemical.

Switches shall be installed 1.4m above floor level.

## **F9.5 Switchgear battery units**

### **F9.5.1 General requirements**

Switchgear battery units shall comprise a floor-mounting or wall-mounting enclosure accommodating charger, battery, control equipment and distribution facilities.

Enclosures shall be of sheet steel construction having a degree of protection IP31 to BS EN 60529:1992, with well-ventilated and fully-segregated compartments for charger, battery cells and dc distribution, with independent lockable access doors to the compartments.

The battery units shall be located in rooms having an ambient air temperature in the range 15°C to 25°C.

### **F9.5.2 Battery**

The battery shall comprise the appropriate number of high-performance sealed or vented type nickel-cadmium type cells having a minimum service life of 10 years.

Vented nickel-cadmium batteries shall have high-impact translucent plastic containers with high and low electrolyte markings.

Cell terminals shall be of the bolted type and interconnections and connections between the battery and output protective devices, links and terminals shall be made using PVC-insulated multi-stranded cable. Terminals shall be shielded with impact-resistant plastic to prevent inadvertent contact.

Cells shall be arranged on tiered shelves and shall be easily accessible for inspection, testing and, for vented-type cells, topping up. Mounting shelves shall have plastic cell trays or other approved electrolyte-corrosion-resistant finish.

The nominal battery voltage shall be 24V, 48V or 110V.

Unless otherwise specified, the battery capacity shall be adequate to supply all connected standing loads for a period not less than 8 hours. For switchgear control duties, at the end of the 8-hour period, the battery shall have sufficient capacity to complete 25 circuit-breaker trip/close operations. At the end of the trip/close operations, the battery voltage shall be not less than 90% of its nominal value with the standing loads connected.

### **F9.5.3 Chargers**

Battery chargers shall comprise a double-wound transformer, silicon rectifier, smoothing circuit and solid-state regulated constant voltage/current supply and shall have 'float' and 'boost' charging regimes. In the 'float' charge mode, the charger shall maintain the battery in a fully-charged condition whilst supplying its rated current. In the 'boost' charge mode, the charger shall be capable of fully charging the battery from a fully-discharged condition in a period not exceeding 7 hours.

The charger output voltage shall be maintained within the limits of  $\pm 2\%$  under all loading conditions for the specified mains supply voltage tolerance.

The charging characteristics for the nickel-cadmium vented-type cell shall minimise electrolyte gassing.

Battery chargers shall be complete with the following facilities as a minimum:

- (a) mains supply on/off switch;
- (b) 'supply on' indication;
- (c) output voltmeter;
- (d) output ammeter;
- (e) float/boost charge selector switch, if applicable;
- (f) 'charger failed' relay with voltage-free contacts for remote indication wired to terminals;
- (g) 'charger failed' indication.

The minimum requirement for the 'charger failed' alarm shall be the detection of ac supply and dc output failure. The relay shall not operate under transient ac supply failure conditions.

### **F9.5.4 Distribution facilities**

Double-pole circuit-breakers shall be provided as required.

### **F9.5.5 Battery earth fault monitoring**

For unearthed dc supply systems double-polarity type earth monitoring shall be provided with the following facilities:

- (a) 'system healthy' indicating light;
- (b) 'earth fault positive' indicating light;
- (c) 'earth fault negative' indicating light;
- (d) voltage-free changeover contact wire to terminals for remote alarm initiation.

### **F9.5.6 Calculations**

Battery capacity calculations shall be submitted to the Engineer for consent.

## **F9.6 Uninterruptible power systems**

### **F9.6.1 General**

Uninterruptible power supply (UPS) units shall be designed and manufactured to comply with BS EN 50091. It shall comprise rectifier, battery charger, batteries, dc to ac converter, static bypass switch and manual system bypass facility mounted in a sheet steel floor-mounting or wall-mounting enclosure.



Unless otherwise specified, enclosures shall have a minimum degree of protection IP21 and shall be vermin-proof. The arrangement of internal equipment shall permit reasonable access to components for inspection, maintenance and replacement.

Removable undrilled gland plates shall be provided at cable-entry points.

Where forced enclosure ventilation is necessary, duplicate fans shall be provided and the equipment shall be capable of operation at rated output with one fan out of operation.

#### **F9.6.2 Isolation and fault protection**

UPS units shall be provided with a lockable main-supply isolating switch and shall incorporate protection against damage resulting from over-current including output short-circuit, and failure of internal components. Solid-state components shall be protected by fast-acting current-limiting fuses. Operation of such devices shall initiate an audible and visual alarm.

#### **F9.6.3 Operating requirements**

UPS units shall be suitable for operation from mains and, where specified, local standby generated supplies.

The UPS shall not generate noise in excess of a sound pressure level of 60dBA measured one metre from its surface, under any mode of operation and at any load up to the maximum rating.

#### **F9.6.4 Battery support time**

The UPS system with a fully-charged battery or batteries shall, on loss of mains supply, be capable of supplying the connected load for the specified period.

#### **F9.6.5 Output waveform**

The output waveform shall be sinusoidal with total harmonic voltage distortion not greater than 5% and individual harmonic voltages not greater than 3% of the fundamental value.

#### **F9.6.6 Steady state regulation**

Steady-state regulation of the output voltage shall be not greater than  $\pm 1.0\%$  due to simultaneous variation of 0 to 100% load and specified mains-supply voltage variation.

#### **F9.6.7 Transient response**

Output voltage transient response shall be not greater than 5% on application or rejection of 100% step load, with recovery to 2% after a period not greater than 30 milliseconds.

#### **F9.6.8 Frequency variation**

Frequency variation when free running in absence of mains power shall be not greater than 0.2%.

### **F9.6.9 Rectifier and battery charger**

The rectifier shall be continuously-rated to supply the rated load of the unit plus, where applicable, the maximum current necessary for battery charging.

The rectifier shall be not less than 6-pulse and shall be designed not to absorb even and triplen harmonic currents from the mains supply.

The harmonic currents generated by the rectifier shall ensure that the total harmonic voltage distortion at the point of common connection with the main electrical power supply does not exceed 5% with individual harmonic voltage distortion not exceeding 4% (odd) and 2% (even).

The generated harmonic currents and resulting power system harmonic distortion shall also be limited to prevent the possibility of resonance with any installed system power factor correction capacitors.

Over-voltage and over-current protection and charger failure detection shall be provided on the battery charging system. Operation of any protection or detection device shall initiate an audible and visual alarm.

Where the battery or the dc supply are not connected to earth or to an earthed system, an earth fault indicator and alarm shall be provided.

### **F9.6.10 Battery**

The battery shall comprise the appropriate number of high performance sealed lead-acid type cells having a minimum service life of 10 years.

The battery cells shall be easily accessible for inspection and testing.

Cell terminals shall be of the bolted type and interconnections and connections between the battery and output protective devices, links and terminals shall be made using PVC-insulated multi-stranded cable. Terminals shall be shielded with impact resistant plastic to prevent inadvertent contact.

A dc circuit breaker shall be provided for the supply from the battery.

The battery and charger system shall be capable of performing the following duty cycle:

- (a) discharge at the rated UPS output power for the specified period of autonomy;
- (b) recharge for a period of 3 hours;
- (c) discharge at the rated UPS output power for a period of 80% of the specified battery support time.

### **F9.6.11 Inverter**

The inverter shall be capable of supplying 150% rated load at nominal voltage for a period of not less than 10 seconds.

**F9.6.12 Static bypass**

A static bypass switch shall be provided to affect a no-break transfer of load from the UPS supply to the bypass supply in the event of an equipment malfunction or overload.

Following operation of the static switch due to an overload, the load shall be automatically restored to the UPS when normal conditions return. Following operation for any other cause, restoration to normal conditions shall require manual operation.

Transfer of load to or from the automatic bypass shall be inhibited when the UPS output is not in synchronism with the bypass supply.

**F9.6.13 Manual bypass**

A manual bypass switch shall be provided to transfer the load from the UPS to mains supply for maintenance purposes.

**F9.6.14 Indications**

The following indications shall be provided as a minimum:

- (a) mains on;
- (b) charger on;
- (c) inverter on;
- (d) bypass on;
- (e) overload;
- (f) output fail;
- (g) battery low;
- (h) auto by-pass.

**F9.6.15 Indicating instruments**

The following indicating instruments shall be provided:

- (a) inverter output ac voltmeter;
- (b) inverter output ac ammeter;
- (c) inverter output frequency meter;
- (d) battery charger voltmeter;
- (e) battery charger ammeter.

**F9.6.16 Alarms**

Audible and visual alarms with accept and reset facilities shall be provided for all fault conditions.

**F9.6.17 Diagnostic indicators**

In addition to the specified indications a comprehensive system of indicators shall be provided to assist in identifying component faults.

## **F9.7 Solar power systems**

Solar power systems shall typically comprise the following configuration:

- solar panel array;
- battery system;
- control panel;
- power distribution system.

The solar panel array shall comprise a series of high-power photovoltaic type polycrystalline silicon cell panels mounted in a sturdy aluminium frame. The whole structure shall be either ground or building mounted and shall be constructed in a manner appropriate to the environment in which it is to be installed. The cells shall be encapsulated in a protective, easily cleanable, weatherproof coating. The coating shall not affect the efficiency of the solar cells. The Contractor shall pay particular attention to the requirements of the local planning authorities, particularly in areas of environmental sensitivity. In all cases, the panel array structure shall be designed to withstand a minimum wind loading of 100mph in any direction. The structure shall be designed so that the tilt angle can be adjusted in order to obtain the optimum operating conditions. The cable-connection facilities at the panel array shall be provided in marshalling enclosures protected to a minimum of IP55.

The size of the solar array shall be determined by the following requirements:

- average ambient temperature (shall be taken as 40°C if not otherwise given in the particular specification);
- number of peak sun hours in a 24-hour period;
- size of load plus 25% spare capacity;
- battery-system charging requirements (fully charging within a single 24-hour period with the load operating at full capacity).

Each solar panel certified peak power output shall be guaranteed for a minimum of 15 years.

The battery system shall comprise a series of maintenance-free lead-acid or high-performance nickel-cadmium type cells. The battery system shall be installed generally as specified in 'Batteries and battery chargers'. The battery system shall be sized to provide continuous operation of the plant on loss of power from the solar cells for a period of 26 hours.

The control unit shall comprise a wall-mounted or panel-mounted unit providing control of battery charging and regulation of the power supply to the load equipment. Unless otherwise specified, the output voltage shall be 24V dc +/-6% and the controller shall be provided with a volt-free alarm output to warn of supply voltage low for connection to a remote alarm system.

The distribution of power from the solar energy power system shall be provided by a miniature circuit breaker distribution board providing circuit protection for each individual load.

All solar cells shall be works tested for peak power output and for voltage and current at peak power output at an illumination level of 1kWm<sup>2</sup> at a spectral density of A 1.5. This test shall be carried out at the normal operating temperature of the cell. This shall be taken as the ambient temperature required by the specification.

## **F9.8 Telephone System**

### **F9.8.1 General**

The telephone system including the complete telephone distribution network and private telephone exchange system shall comprise of the following:

- telephone distribution installation
- electronic private automatic branch exchange (EPABX)
- main distribution frame (MDF)
- EPABX peripheral equipment
- operator's console
- telephone sets
- power supply equipment
- ancillary equipment
- all measures for approval by and connection to the local telephone company

A modern state-of-the-art telephone system based on digital signal transmission shall be installed.

The system shall be capable of being connected to the Employers proposed state wide IP telephony system.

The proposed telephone system including all components and installations shall comply with appropriate regulations and the requirements of national and international standards.

The operation voltage on site shall be 240 V/50 Hz.

EPABX and related equipment shall be tested at manufacturer's premises, and test certificates, certified by an official testing authority, are to be submitted to the Engineer before shipping and delivery to site.

### **F9.8.2 Telephone Distribution Components**

Telephone distribution cabinets and Boxes shall be made of steel or metal alloy, general purpose enclosures, for surface or concealed mounting, of a suitable size with a spatial reserve of at least 30%, dust-proof, IP 42 protection for indoor mounting and IP 55 for outdoor mounting, with tamper-proof screwed covers for up to 50 pair capacity.

Terminal blocks shall be of the screw or plug-in quick connect type in moulded high insulation resistance phenolic base, fixed by two captive screws, with double-ended nickel-plated brass connectors, and plug-in or set-screw terminals for connection of conductors with diameters between 0.5 and 1 mm.

Telephone cabling shall be carried out with two-pair and multi-pair cables for indoor and outdoor cabling. The cabling shall be polyethylene insulated, tinned solid copper conductors, twisted into pairs, colour coded, minimum diameter of conductor is to be 0.8 mm.

Cables are to be rated for maximum operating voltage of 150 V with insulation resistance of 10,000 mega ohm/km, and tested at 500 V dc applied core-core and core-earth.

Telephone outlets are to have modular grid box and cover plates similar to other socket outlets and switches described elsewhere, with cord-grip cover and fixed mounting set-screw terminal block inside box.

### **F9.8.3 Electronic Private Automatic Branch Exchange system (EPABX)**

The EPABX-design shall permit station numbers to be assigned to lines at time of installation, in accordance with customer-desired numbering plan, and reassignment while in service to allow personnel moves without requiring number changes.

It shall be possible to assign to each extension, restriction for outward calls as follows:

- Non-restricted: having unrestricted access to external lines for outward calls either by direct dialling or through operator.
- Semi-restricted: having access to external lines only for local calls by direct dialling or through operator.
- Restricted: having no access to external lines neither through direct dialling nor through operator.
- It shall be possible to segregate external trunk lines as follows:
- Lines for outgoing calls accessible only by operators.
- Lines for outgoing calls accessible by operators and by all remaining non-restricted and semi-restricted extensions.

The EPABX shall be fully electronic, digital stored program, microprocessor controlled with LSI switching circuits. Reed relays, mini-switches, cross-point switching and cross-bar techniques are not acceptable. The EPABX shall be designed for use as a universal telephone exchange system for all applications. It shall be possible to connect any combination of DTMF and rotary dial telephones to the EPABX, with the provision of manufacturer-made interface modules as necessary within the EPABX and without the need to modify the assembly.

The capacity has to be suitable to connect a sufficient number of telephones as specified in particular specification.

The power supply for the whole telephone system shall be supported by an Uninterrupted Power Supply (UPS).

### **F9.8.4 System Performance**

As a minimum the following features shall be provided:

- Station-to-station calling: Station user is to be able to directly dial other stations within EPABX system without assistance of operator.
- Direct outward dialling (DOD): Non-restricted and semi-restricted station user shall be able to gain access to exchange network, without assistance of operator, by dialling an access code, receiving a second dial tone and then dialling desired network exchange number.
- Executive override (break-in): Station user shall be able to enter existing two-party busy station connection; this intrusion is to be preceded by a warning tone; if a person called releases his line, he is automatically called back.
- Camp on busy: If internal extension called is busy, it shall be possible to dial a digit

and to hang up; the two telephone stations are automatically called back as soon as they are simultaneously free.

- Enquiry call: When telephone user is in conversation with the outside he shall be able to put his communication on hold, dial an internal number, consult privately, and then take back first communication.
- Call transfer: This shall enable any extension in the installation to directly divert an external communication to another extension without going through the operator.
- Dial access to operator: Station users within switching system shall be able to reach operator by dialling a single digit, and operator may complete these calls to trunk facilities or other stations.
- Line lockout with warning: This shall give 30 seconds warning tone and then holds the line out of service when a station line remains off-hook for longer than 10 seconds without dialling; the hold out-of service shall be released when station goes on-hook.
- Splitting: Station user shall be able to consult privately with one party on a call without third party heading.
- Power failure transfer: This shall allow a limited number of pre-assigned station to get access to or from the network in case of battery failure.
- Call-back queuing for trunks: This shall allow the user to wait for a trunk to be idle when the trunk is idle, the exchange rings back, and then wait for user to go off-hook and dial the number.
- Direct distance dialling (DDD): This shall allow user to dial long distance calls without intervention of operator.
- Single digit dialling shall be provided.
- As a minimum the operator's console features shall include at least the following:
  - Facility to check status of any individual trunk or extension line.
  - Ring-when-free facility for external calls transferred to a given busy extension.
  - Automatic return to operator if an extension does not answer an outside call within 15 seconds.
  - Time reminder: Operator is to be automatically alerted after e.g. 30 seconds when an internal or outside call on the console is waiting.
  - Calling number display: visual display of EPABX station seeking attendant assistance.
  - Transfer or incoming call to wanted extension made by push-button key set.
  - Priority: Operator is to be able to interfere in an established communication for special announcements or transfer of incoming calls; warning tone is to be sent to both conversing parties.
  - Splitting: Operator is to be able to consult privately with one party on a call without the other party hearing.
  - Operator is to be able to connect any internal extension or outside trunk line with any other internal extension; operator is to be able to place an outgoing call for a station user without requiring the station user to hang up.
  - Call hold: Calls that cannot immediately be extended, are to be placed in a hold buffer; when required extension becomes available, the call is to be retrieved from hold buffer and extended to extension.
  - Abbreviated dialling: Operator is to be able to assign short dial codes for frequently called destinations.
  - Automatic call supervision: If an unannounced extended call is not answered within a predetermined time, the call is to be automatically returned to the operator.
  - Fault indication: Any fault within the system is to be automatically detected and signalled by an alarm buzzer and an indicating lamp.

- Automatic and manual switch-over to night service: Incoming trunk calls during night operation are to be routed to predetermined answering stations; routings are to be on a flexible basis by the attendant and are to remain in effect until changed.
- Do not disturb: Operator shall, upon request, be able to prevent selected station lines or groups of lines from receiving any calls. When activated, restricted calls shall be routed to the operator. The restricted station shall return automatically to normal upon lighting the hand-set of the restricted station.

#### **F9.8.5 System Peripheral Equipment**

The EPABX shall contain disk storage of all system and user data, to serve as back-up storage for protection of system configuration data and operating system software.

Facilities shall be included to store and print upon request the full list of outward calls, with indication of number called, number of internal extension originating the call, date, time and duration of call.

The exchange components shall be grouped in a single modular, totally enclosed, sheet metal cabinet, with lockable front access doors. The cabinet shall be dust and insect proof and adequately ventilated. Range of temperatures recommended for continuous operation of the system shall be submitted to the Engineer.

Electronic circuits and components shall be plug-in cord type, with solid state electronic components. Equipment shall be assembled neatly in racks. Sensitive equipment shall have dust protection covers.

The operator's console shall be equipped to enable operator to provide all services required and have full control of system operation.

#### **F9.8.6 Main Distribution Frame (MDF)**

The size of the main distribution frame shall be suitable for ultimate capacity of EPABX regarding a spatial reserve of at least 30%. All internal and external lines of EPABX system shall be connected to MDF.

Protection against over-voltage on all trunk circuits shall be provided

Terminals shall be identified by numbered tags corresponding to respective lines and extensions. Proposed numbering scheme shall be submitted for approval. Internal and external lines shall be connected by "plugged" twin terminals. Soldering will not be allowed.

#### **F9.8.7 Telephone Extension Sets**

Telephones shall be placed on tables or on the wall. Dialling shall be push button operated, dual tone multi-frequency type (DTMF) and pulse type, switchable.

The set shall have an impact resistant and temperature-stable plastic, two dish bells with an infinitely variable belt loudness level, receiver with high grade plugable microphone and receiver capsules. Those sets which may be installed in wet areas shall have a corrosion-resistant housing.



## **F9.9 Local Area Network (LAN) Cabling System**

### **F9.9.1 General**

The Contractor shall maintain conductor polarity identification at the main equipment room and network rooms in accordance to all relevant codes of practices.

All cables installed by the Contractor shall be fully tested for continuity prior to installation.

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to furnish any special installation equipment or tools necessary for the proper functioning of the system. This shall include, but not be limited to, tools for terminating cables, testing and splicing equipment for copper/fibre cables, communication devices, jack stands for cable reels, or cable wenchers.

The Contractor shall not route any distribution communication cabling alongside power lines, or share the same conduit, channel or sleeve with electrical apparatus.

The Contractor shall ensure that the maximum pulling tensions of the specified distribution cables are not exceeded and cable bends maintain the proper radius during the placement of the facilities. Failure to follow the appropriate guidelines will require the Contractor to provide in a timely fashion the additional material and labour necessary to rectify the situation at his own expense. This shall also apply and all damages sustained to the cables by the Contractor during the implementation.

The Contractor shall install any equipment or electronics exactly as documented on the approved plans. In the event any variance is determined to be necessary, the Contractor must secure the approval of the Engineer.

In additional to the general standards, the following standards and reference documents will be applicable to the structured cabling system:

EIA/TIA 568A	Commercial Building Telecommunications Wiring Standard
EIA/TIA 569	Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
ISO 11801	Communication Cabling Systems for Commercial Premises

All equipment supplied shall be tested by international/local institutions for example, the Under-writer's Laboratories (UL). The Contractor shall submit such test certificates to the Engineer.

### **F9.9.2 Cabling system**

The LAN Cabling System to be provided shall incorporate all features and facilities listed in this specification and must include the following :

- (a) The Work Area subsystem at the user end shall include of the wiring from the terminal devices to the information outlets on the faceplates. Each faceplate can have one or more information outlets. It consists of RJ45 jack on angles faceplate, station cord and the termination of horizontal cable to the RJ45 jacks.

- (b) All installed cables shall be fixed and supported in an appropriate manner to a surface. No loose or trailing cables are permitted. Trunking shall be used in ceiling voids and on walls. There shall be no exposed cable at the junctions between the trunking and each outlet.
- (c) Trunking shall not be filled above 50% capacity. All cables shall be laid as flat as possible to prevent kinks. All cable ends shall be protected against ingress of water and physical damage. The cables should be a distance away and not sharing the same shafts or voids used by power cables and lightning conductors. The minimum separation of 500mm will be required.
- (d) The maximum physical distance of the FTP from the faceplate to the patch panel or hub shall not be more than 90m. There shall be a slack of 2m of cable for each point in the rack and at the receiving end.
- (e) The system includes cross connects and interconnects that links the various subsystems together. It shall comprise of patch panels, distribution units, cable management, patch cords and equipment racks.
- (f) A cable management panel shall be provided for every two-patch panels and every fibre panel. Additional cable management panel shall be provided to enhance the tidiness of the cables.
- (g) All transmission media proposed shall be protected against rodent attack and weather damages.
- (h) The Structured Cabling System shall be warranted by the Manufacturer for a period of fifteen (15) years to be free from defects in material and workmanship.

### **F9.9.3 FTP Cable**

The FTP Cable used shall conform to the latest edition ISO/IEC 11801, CAT 6 FTP specification.

- (a) The CAT 6 FTP cable proposed shall come with the following technical features.
- (b) The FTP cable shall be 100 Ohms, foil-shielded horizontal cable containing four twisted pairs.
- (c) The FTP cable shall be housed in Low Smoke Zero-Halogen, flame-retardant jacket (LSZH-FR)
- (d) The FTP cable shall conform to ISO/IEC 11801, Category 6 requirements.
- (e) The FTP cable shall meet ISO/IEC DIS 11801 and ANSI/EIA/TIA 568 TSB-36.
- (f) The FTP cable shall meet EN50081-1, EN50082-1, EN55022, EN55024 and ISO/IEC 11801 emission standards.
- (g) The FTP cable shall conform to the minimum mechanical characteristics stated in Table A

Wire insulation	Foam skin PE or equivalent
Sheath material	Low Smoke Zero-halogen, flame-retardant (LSHF-FR) material
Deployment	Indoor
Temperature range (installation)	0 to +50 °C
Temperature range (at rest)	-20 to +60 °C
Min. bend radius	5 x Diameter
During installation	7 x 5 Diameter

- (h) The FTP cable shall conform to UL 1581 VW-1 Flammability Test and Flame retardant to IEC 332-1 and IEC 332-2 standards.
- (i) The FTP cable shall conform to the typical FTP cable construction and shall have the following features:
- (i) Copper conductor with 0.51mm diameter (AWG 24);
  - (ii) Foam skin PE insulation;
  - (iii) Wires twisted into pairs with the following colour coding.

Pair 1	White/Blue
Pair 2	White/Orange
Pair 3	White/Green
Pair 4	White/Brown

#### **F9.9.4 Rack**

The number of racks required shall be determined by the LAN points served by each floor. The arrangement for the racks for the LANs point in the server room shall be as follows:

Rack 1 – 1 core switch + 40 FTP points

Rack 2 – 1 core switch + 40 FTP points

Rack 3 – For FTP points exceeding sum of Rack 1 & Rack 2 (i.e. 40+40) up to 120 point per rack.

LAN Room – up to 120 points per rack

The innermost rack shall be fully occupied first. Racks shall not be provided for the servers.

#### **F9.9.5 Labelling requirement**

The Contractor shall tag all the cables, equipment and information outlets. All information outlets shall be labelled with a unique identifier.

The labels and markings shall be durable and legible and shall not degrade within the lifetime of the system. The label markings shall be indelible and waterproof.

## **PART G - INSTRUMENTATION STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

## **PART G - INSTRUMENTATION STANDARD SPECIFICATION**

### **G1.0 INSTRUMENTATION — GENERAL**

#### **G1.1 Scope**

This part covers the general requirements for the design, supply, installation, inspection and testing of the instrumentation and associated plant and materials.

#### **G1.2 Reference standards**

Unless otherwise approved, instrumentation shall comply with relevant quality standards test procedures and codes of practice collectively referred to as Reference Standards including those listed below in accordance with the requirements detailed elsewhere in this specification.

IEC 60381-1:1982	Analogue signals for process control systems. Specification for direct current signals.
IEC 60947-4-1:2000	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. Electromechanical contactors and motor-starters.
IEC 60947-4-2:1999	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. A.C. semiconductor motor controllers and starters.
IEC 60947-4-3:1999	Specification for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear. Contactors and motor-starters. Contactors and motor-starters. AC semiconductor controllers and contactors for non-motor loads.
IEC 60770-1:1999	Transmitters for use in industrial-process control systems. Methods for performance evaluation.
BS ISO 1217:1996	Displacement compressors. Acceptance tests.
ISO 2112:1990	Specification for amino plastic moulding materials.
ISO 6817:1997	Measurement of conductive liquid flow in closed conduits. Method using electromagnetic flow meters.
BS EN 837-1:1998	Pressure gauges. Bourdon tube pressure gauges. Dimensions, metrology, requirements and testing.
BS EN 1057:1996	Copper and copper alloys. Seamless, round copper tubes for water and gas in sanitary and heating applications.
BS EN 1092-1:2002	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, PN designated. Steel flanges.
BS EN 1563:1997	Founding. Spheroidal graphite cast iron.
BS EN 60529:1992	Specification for degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code).

- BS EN 60534-1:1993 Industrial-process control valves. Industrial-process control valves. Control valve terminology and general considerations.
- BS EN 60546-1:1993 Controllers with analogue signals for use in industrial-process control systems. Controllers with analogue signals for use in industrial-process control systems. Methods for evaluating performance.
- BS EN 60584-2:1993 Thermocouples. Tolerances.
- BS EN 60654:1998 Operating conditions for industrial-process measurement and control equipment. All relevant parts.
- BS EN 60751:1996 Industrial platinum resistance thermometer sensors.
- BS EN 60873:1993 Methods of evaluating the performance of electrical and pneumatic analogue chart recorders for use in industrial-process control systems.
- BS EN 61000-6:2001 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC). Generic standards. Emission standard for industrial environments.
- BS 89:1990 Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories. All parts.
- BS 90:1975 Specification for direct-acting electrical recording instruments and their accessories.
- BS 476 Fire tests on building materials and structures. All parts.
- BS 1042-1.4:1992 Measurement of fluid flow in closed conduits. Pressure differential devices. Guide to the use of devices specified in Sections 1.1 and 1.2.
- BS 1041-2.1:1985 Code for temperature measurement. Expansion thermometers. Guide to selection and use of liquid-in-glass thermometers.
- BS 1041-2.2:1989 Code for temperature measurement. Expansion thermometers. Guide to selection and use of dial-type expansion thermometers.
- BS 1041-3:1989 Temperature measurement. Guide to selection and use of industrial resistance thermometers.
- BS 1041-4:1992 Temperature measurement. Guide to the selection and use of thermocouples.
- BS 1042-1.4:1992 Measurement of fluid flow in closed conduits. Pressure differential devices. Guide to the use of devices specified in Sections 1.1 and 1.2.
- BS 1123-1:1987 Safety valves, gauges and fusible plugs for compressed air or inert gas installations. Code of practice for installation.
- BS 1203:2001 Hot-setting phenolic and aminoplastic wood adhesives. Classification and test method.
- BS 1553-1:1977 Specification for graphical symbols for general engineering. Piping systems and plant.

BS 1571-2:1975	Specification for testing of positive displacement compressors and exhausters. Methods for simplified acceptance testing for air compressors and exhausters.
BS 1646-1:1979	Symbolic representation for process measurement control functions and instrumentation. Basic requirements.
BS 1646-2:1983	Symbolic representation for process measurement control functions and instrumentation. Specification for additional basic requirements.
BS 1646-3:1984	Symbolic representation for process measurement control functions and instrumentation. Specification for detailed symbols for instrument interconnection diagrams.
BS 1646-4:1984	Symbolic representation for process measurement control functions and instrumentation. Specification for basic symbols for process computer, interface and shared display/control functions.
BS 1794:1952	Specification for chart ranges for temperature recording instruments.
BS 2765:1969	Specification for dimensions of temperature detecting elements and corresponding pockets.
BS 3680	Measurement of liquid flow in open channels. All relevant parts.
BS 3693:1992	Recommendations for design of scales and indexes on analogue indicating instruments.
BS 4675-2:1978	Mechanical vibration in rotating machinery. Requirements for instruments for measuring vibration severity.
BS 4999-142:1987	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for mechanical performance: vibration.
BS 5169:1992	Specification for fusion welded steel air receivers.
BS 5728-3:1997	Measurement of flow of cold potable water in closed conduits. Methods for determining principal characteristics of single mechanical water meters (including test equipment) .
BS 6004:2000	Electric cables. PVC insulated, non-armoured cables for voltages up to and including 450/750 V, for electric power, lighting and internal wiring.
BS 6739:1986	Code of practice for instrumentation in process control systems: installation design and practice.
BS 7671:2001	Requirements for electrical installations. IEE Wiring Regulations. Sixteenth edition.

Instrument Society of American Standards and Recommended Practices:

S 5.1	Instrumentation symbols and identification
S 5.4	Instrument loop diagrams
S 7.3	Quality standard for instrument air

RP 16.1	Terminology, dimensions and safety practices for indicating variable 2, 3 area meters
RP 16.4	Nomenclature and terminology for extension-type variable-area meters (rotameters)
RP 16.5	Installation, operation, maintenance instructions for glass tube variable area meters (rotameters)
RP 16.6	Methods and equipment for calibration of variable area meters (rotameters)
RP 18.1	Specifications and guides for the use of general purpose annunciators
S 26	Dynamic response testing of process control instrumentation
RP 31.1	Specification, installation and calibration of turbine flowmeters
S 37.1	Electrical transducer nomenclature and terminology
S 37.3	Specifications and tests for strain gauge pressure transducers
S 50.1	Compatibility of analog signals for electronic industrial process instruments
S 51.1	Process instrumentation terminology
RP 60.08	Electrical Guide for Control Centres

### **G1.3 Statement of compliance**

The Contractor shall provide a list of the reference standards used and shall provide a compliance/non-compliance statement.

All standards which the Contractor intends to use but which are not referenced herein shall be submitted to the Engineer for consent before any design against that standard proceeds.

Installation works shall comply with all relevant local Indian Regulations including the Code of Practice for Electrical Wiring Installations – IS 732.

### **G1.4 Submissions by Contractor**

#### **G1.4.1 General**

The Contractor shall make submissions to the Engineer of all design drawings and schedules relating to instrumentation and control equipment and systems provided under this Contract. These submissions shall include, where relevant, the following:

#### **G1.4.2 Functional design specification**

The Contractor shall submit a complete functional design specification (FDS) for approval by the Engineer. This document shall serve as the primary mechanism by which the Engineer may confirm that the Contractor possesses an accurate understanding of the system and its control requirements. The Contractor is encouraged to obtain clarifications and to suggest refinements to the control descriptions contained in this Specification.

The FDS shall comprise an overall description of the plant, its functioning and control, and a detailed description of each section of the control system covering modes of operation, manual overrides, set-point and parameter selection and adjustment. The detailed description shall include a step-by-step control description which defines the function of each piece of equipment and each control action and interlock, including details of the program in each



programmable item. The format of the program details may be chosen by the Contract, however it is suggested that this format be chosen to satisfy the requirements of the software design documentation, if applicable, as described elsewhere.

The FDS shall describe the 'fail-safe' features incorporated into the design for the event of failure of a plant item or system, or loss of an input signal affecting a control loop or process sequence.

The FDS shall describe control actions taken and monitoring functions which remain available during a power failure, and any automatic controls or sequencing which take place during system start-up and shut-down.

The FDS shall be presented in a clear and precise manner and shall include figures or drawings where appropriate.

The Contractor shall submit and obtain approval of the FDS from the Engineer before beginning the detailed control system design. The contractor should take note of the importance of this obligation.

#### **G1.4.3 Drawings and schedules**

- (a) Process and instrumentation diagram which shall comply with BS 1646 (all parts) and BS 1553-1:1977.
- (b) General arrangement drawings of field-mounted instruments showing installation details.
- (c) General arrangement drawings of instrument and control panels, fully-dimensioned in plan and elevation views, showing foundation and fixing details, access doors, clearances, cable-entry positions, weight and lifting arrangement.
- (d) Layout drawings of panel fascias showing instruments, controls and details of all labels.
- (e) Layout drawings of panel interior showing equipment, terminal blocks and cable ways.
- (f) Annunciator arrangement and engraving details.
- (g) Internal circuit and wiring diagrams for instrument and control panels.
- (h) Schematic control diagrams.
- (j) Instrument loop diagrams.
- (k) Instrument wiring and piping diagrams.
- (l) Interconnection wiring diagrams.
- (m) Cable block diagrams, drawings and schedules.
- (n) Instrument system and panel power distribution diagrams.
- (p) Programmable-device functional design specifications which shall include hardware details, logic flow charts, ladder diagrams and program listings.
- (q) Schedules of inputs to and outputs from programmable controllers and telemetry outstations.
- (r) Labelling schedules.
- (s) Comprehensive testing schedules for all off-site, on-site, pre-commissioning and commissioning tests and take-over tests.

All other drawings necessary for the provision of ducts, openings, trenches, fixing holes for panels and the like and for the complete understanding of the operation, maintenance and

extension of the system including any required for the Purchaser to dismantle, repair, maintain, modify or extend the Plant.

#### **G1.4.4 Data and calculations**

- (a) Manufacturers' catalogues and data sheets.
- (b) Calculations to support control system design.
- (c) Specification for protective coatings and painting.

#### **G1.4.5 Certificates**

- (a) Manufacturers' works tests.
- (b) Pre-installation checks.
- (c) Pressure-testing schedules.
- (d) Instrument loop test check sheets.
- (e) Installed instrument performance tests.
- (f) System tests.
- (g) Statutory certificates of compliance (such as hazardous area equipment).

#### **G1.4.6 Operation and maintenance instructions**

Composite manual describing the functional and operation of each piece of equipment.

Composite manual for testing and servicing every system and individual item.

#### **G1.5 Basic features**

Each instrumentation system shall be designed, manufactured and installed to achieve the following basic requirements:

- to maintain the highest standards of availability, reliability and accuracy and to give clear warnings of any deterioration in performance;
- to suit the abilities of the staff who will:
  - (a) use the systems;
  - (b) service the systems.
- to measure, indicate, process, store and control the relevant parameters, as specified;
- to give clear warnings of dangerous and other abnormal conditions and to initiate plant safety procedures, shutdowns and corrective measures as specified to assure the safety of 'operations and maintenance' personnel and plant and to store and collate the data, as required;
- to derive, present and utilise, as required, such additional data as required to facilitate:
  - (a) the most efficient operation of the plant;
  - (b) the routine maintenance of the plant.

## **G1.6 Design requirements for instrumentation systems**

The instrumentation, control and automation installations shall fully comply with design standards, regulations and the material and workmanship requirements of the Specification.

The electrical plant installations associated instrumentation control and automation systems shall also comply with and be tested in accordance with the latest edition of 'Requirements for Electrical Installations' BS 7671:2001, and with the relevant standards of Indian in which the plant is to be installed. All electrical consumable items shall be readily available within Indian.

All installations, shall also comply in conjunction with associated mechanical and electrical power plant installations with the UK's Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 (or the latest edition) and the Electricity at Work Regulation 1989 (or the latest edition), which specify standards of safety for industrial plant installations, and with the relevant standards of the Country in which the plant is to be installed.

All equipment and materials incorporated in the system shall be selected, designed and rated to operate under the defined performance duties and specified site conditions and to maintain a high level of operational reliability.

The instrumentation control and monitoring system equipment and materials shall have an operational life of not less than 15 years, unless otherwise consented to by the Engineer.

## **G2.0 PANEL DETAILS**

### **G2.1 Enclosures and mounting boards**

Enclosures shall be any form of board, cabinet, panel, desk, box or case used to protect, contain or group instrumentation, telemetry or control equipment.

All equipment in or on enclosures shall be arranged logically and, as far as possible, symmetrically, with projections kept to a minimum. Each enclosure and board shall be designed on ergonomic principles and shall permit in-situ and safe access for any normal adjustment, maintenance and servicing. The tops of plant-mounted enclosures shall be sloped downwards from front to rear.

The minimum degree of protection shall be IP 31 in purpose designed control rooms and IP 54 for other indoor locations.

Enclosures for use outside buildings or in places where splashing may occur shall have a minimum rating of protection to BS EN 60529:1992, IP 56 and have tops which project sufficiently to protect the vertical faces of the enclosure and any component mounted thereon from splashing, inclement weather and direct sunlight. Also, when enclosures for use outside buildings are located where exposure to direct sunlight will give rise to high top-panel surface temperatures such that the internal temperature rises above the manufacturer's recommendation (normally 40°C), the enclosure shall include a sun shield fitted to the top of the enclosure.

Fixing arrangements for surface-mounting enclosures shall be external to the enclosure and shall ensure that the rear face of the enclosure is not in contact with the surface to which it is fixed.

Enclosures shall have hinged access doors, fitted with recessed lockable handles. Doors shall be of rigid construction and provided with close-fitting flexible seals in recesses to prevent the ingress of liquids, moisture, dust and vermin. Hinges shall be of the lift-off pattern and one hinge shall engage before the other for ease of fitting. Wherever necessary, removable access covers secured by quick-release fasteners shall be provided to ensure ease of maintenance for all installed apparatus. Mounting plates, brackets and racks shall be provided for all other internal equipment which shall be hinged or otherwise arranged with quick-release fasteners or captive screws to give quick and easy access to equipment, securing screws, terminals and wiring.

Enclosures for two or more devices with electrical circuits shall have gland plates and terminal blocks as specified elsewhere.

Each enclosure shall be designed for the safe testing and servicing of equipment with the power on. Each part which may be live under any circumstances shall be so covered or shielded as to prevent inadvertent contact.

## **G2.2 Panel design and construction**

Unless otherwise specified, all instrument panels, instrument cubicles, control panels, control consoles and desks, associated equipment and terminal racks, telemetry and electronic equipment racks and the like shall be free-standing, floor-mounted units and shall conform to the requirements of this part and will hereafter be referred to as panels.

The design and dimensions of control consoles and desks shall be determined according to their intended function but shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Specification drawings. The height shall not exceed 1400mm above the finished floor level.

Unless otherwise specified or shown in the Specification drawings, the height of panels shall be not greater than 2130mm overall (excluding lifting devices) above finished floor level.

Front-of-panel instruments and controls shall be mounted so that the height of their centres above the floor shall be generally between 1800mm and 900mm for indicators, 1400mm and 900mm for recorders and process controllers, 2000mm and 750mm for alarm facias and signal lamps and 1500mm and 750mm for manual controls. Controls, switches and push-buttons shall be positioned below or adjacent to any associated reading instrument. Panels for use in locations such as pumping stations and machinery rooms shall have anti-vibration mountings.

The clearance between the extremities of apparatus mounted on the internal walls shall allow safe and unobstructed access to all terminals and to parts requiring maintenance.

Panel layout drawings shall normally include a list of all instruments, accessories and components contained therein. If the drawings have insufficient space for the list, a separate schedule of instruments, accessories and components shall be provided and the panel drawing shall contain a cross reference to the contents list and an indication of the panel location of each item on the list.

### G2.3 Panels — major

Panels shall be constructed generally as specified in the preceding clause and as shown in the Specification drawings. Panel material shall be prime-quality, cold-rolled and annealed mild steel or zinc-coated mild steel sheet, suitably braced and stiffened as necessary with flat bar or angle to form a rigid structure.

Panel fronts shall be flat and free from bow or ripple. Exterior corners and edges shall be rounded or welded and ground to give a smooth overall appearance. Flanged edges shall be straight and smooth.

Materials shall be chosen with due regard to the panel size, number of cut-outs, instrument weight and position of centre of gravity and method of fabrication, with the following minimum thicknesses except where otherwise shown in the Specification drawings.

- instrument bearing surfaces, gland plates and pneumatic distribution plates: 3mm;
- internal mounting plates: 3mm;
- doors, covers and filler panels: 2mm.

No design involving the use of externally-visible assembly or fixing bolts and screws nor any design resulting in dust or water-collecting crevices will be accepted.

Stiffeners and supporting frameworks shall be provided where necessary inside panels. Framework shall be hinged or fixed, suitable for the installation of instruments, components and internal equipment for which it is provided and located to give easy access to adjacent equipment.

When a panel is constructed in sections, the sections shall be designed for ease of assembly during installation and, in any case, shall not exceed 2m in length. All necessary nuts, bolts, washers and the like shall be supplied and included in the same shipment as the relevant sections. Sections exceeding 1m in length shall be provided with double doors.

Unless otherwise shown in the Specification drawings, each panel shall be mounted on a self-draining base frame fabricated from 150mm deep, steel channel section which shall be drilled or provided with clamps for bolting to the floor. The base frame shall be set back from the panel front face to give a toe space of not less than 25mm. The outside of the base frame shall be covered with an approved kicking strip.

Ceiling and other filler panels shall be fabricated from sheet steel and adequately stiffened. Each section shall have 50mm returned edges along all four sides and shall be braced to the main steelwork of the panel.

A chequer-plate floor shall be provided inside and above the level of the base frame, having openings suitable for the bottom entry of cables when applicable. Sufficient removable undrilled gland plates, in sections convenient for handling, shall be fitted close to the appropriate terminal blocks and not less than 230mm above the panel floor or not less than 230mm below the panel top. The gland plates shall have removable side covers giving access to both sides of the gland plate and ensuring vermin-proof and dust-proof construction. Gland plates of a surface-mounted enclosure may form a part of the base or top.

Panels containing pneumatic or other instruments using a fluid as the transmission medium shall have distribution plates with bulkhead unions for the termination of internal and external pipework.

All doors shall open outwards and all doors in one panel assembly shall use the same lock and key combination.

Panel design shall ensure adequate ventilation and air circulation without permitting the entry of vermin or dust. Panels installed in control rooms or other clean condition areas shall have louvres to allow air circulation. Temporary closures shall be provided to prevent the entry of dust and vermin during transit and installation. After commissioning has been completed, all entries except air-circulation louvres shall be sealed.

No equipment other than front-of-panel items shall be mounted on panel wall surfaces.

If electrical and non-electrical instruments are mounted in the same panel, the panel shall be subdivided internally to separate the electrical and non-electrical sections. All connections shall be arranged to ensure that no accidental damage to cabling or electrical components can occur in the event of failure of any non-electrical component or connection.

Provision shall be made for safe and easy handling during transit and installation. If lifting eyes are provided, they shall be reversible and panel tops shall be reinforced where necessary.

Where equipment is specified to be installed at a future date, space shall be allocated, and cut-outs with removable masking plates, brackets, supports, wiring, terminals and piping and the like shall be provided.

Panels shall be finish-coated at the place of manufacture before commencing the installation of apparatus and other fittings.

#### **G2.4 Panels — minor**

Panels for installation on the Plant which contain relatively few items of equipment, or where so specified elsewhere, shall be classed as minor panels and shall be constructed generally as specified in the preceding clause and comply with this Clause.

Panels shall be fabricated from sheet steel or other approved material less than 2.5mm thick suitably braced to form a robust and rigid structure. Exterior corners and edges shall be rounded to give a smooth overall appearance and assembly bolts, screws or rivets shall not be visible on the front face.

The design shall be such as to ensure adequate ventilation and air circulation where required, without permitting the entry of vermin. Openings for cables shall be made vermin-proof. Doors shall be hinged and shall be provided with close-fitting flexible seals in recesses to prevent the ingress of liquids, moisture, dust and vermin. Unless otherwise specified, panels shall be suitable for floor mounting and shall not exceed 2000mm in height. Where surface-mounted panels are provided, the fixing shall prevent the ingress of moisture and the rear of the enclosure shall be not less than 10mm from the wall.

Lifting eyebolts shall be removed, issued to the Purchaser and subsequently replaced with bolts after installation.

Panels shall be extensible, and symmetrically arranged as far as possible with projections kept to a minimum. Where two or more panels are fitted together, they shall form a flush-fronted continuous panel of uniform height. Front door and top cover dimensions shall match. Instruments, relays, and control devices shall be mounted at a height not more than 2000mm and not less than 300mm from floor level.

The arrangement of equipment within each enclosure shall be such as to permit easy access for installation and maintenance. No instruments, relays or other components shall be mounted on rear access doors or removable covers.

## **G2.5 Panels — composite**

In situations where space limitations preclude the use of separate instrumentation, control and automation (ICA) and switchgear panels and, at the sole discretion of the Engineer, ICA equipment may be combined within a single enclosure subject to the following conditions:

- the observance of all other clauses herein relating to enclosures, mounting boards and minor panels;
- the written assurance of each supplier of ICA equipment that the proximity of the switchgear will have no detrimental effect on the life or performance of any ICA component;
- the total segregation of ICA equipment and switchgear including the glanding and termination facilities;
- the absence of any voltage exceeding 250V ac or 50V dc from any compartment containing ICA equipment;
- the use of the full height of the panel (excluding the busbar chamber and cable space) for any ICA equipment compartment.

## **G2.6 Panels — glass reinforced plastic (GRP)**

Any panel required to be installed outside buildings shall, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer, be manufactured from double-skin, resin-bonded fibreglass, with a totally-encapsulated infill of rigid weatherproof and 'boilproof' plywood to BS 1203:2001 between the two skins to provide a rigid and vandal-proof enclosure. The environmental rating shall be IP 56 or better.

For any application in a non-temperate climate or where so specified elsewhere, the roof section shall be sloping and have a totally-encapsulated infill of end-grain balsa instead of plywood.

Box-section steel shall be encapsulated into door edges and door frames. Door locks, handles and hinges shall be of a high tensile strength, non-corroding alloy with stainless steel pins and through fixing bolts. Large plane surfaces shall have adequate reinforcing to ensure rigidity.

The doors shall be complete with latching handles and locks. All door catches and locks shall latch onto steel-reinforced surfaces.

Threaded studs shall be incorporated into the design of the panel for the mounting of sub-frames within the panel. Any panel drilled to provide fixings for internal equipment will not be accepted.

Each cubicle shall be provided with a floor or deck with a removable gland plate for cable entry.

The laminate material shall have flame-retardant characteristics in compliance with BS 476 Class 2, and shall retain 'stability, integrity and insulation' for 30 minutes.

Colour-impregnated gel coats backed by coloured resin shall be used to ensure maintenance-free and 'colour-fast' finishes. The external finish colour shall be advised by the Engineer and the internal finish colour shall be white.

The fronts of externally-visible instruments and windows shall be of glass. An air-gap of 100mm shall be provided between the top surface of the panel and its protective canopy.

All internal equipment shall be mounted on supports built into the fibreglass structure. Fixing bolts through the skin will not be accepted.

## **G2.7 Panel protection**

Adequate facilities for isolation and protection by miniature circuit breaker or fuse for each instrumentation and control circuit and sub-circuit shall be provided and shall be so arranged that any interruption causes minimum disruption of plant, operates the appropriate alarm and cannot result in any unsafe operating condition.

All fuses shall be of the cartridge pattern and main fuses shall be of the high rupturing capacity type. Fuse and solid-link carriers and bases shall be of plastic-moulded insulating material of an approved make. Ceramic materials will not be accepted. Live connections shall be efficiently shrouded and it shall be possible to change fuses with power on without danger of contact with live metal. The fuses shall be rated to give maximum protection to the equipment in circuit and the rating shall be permanently inscribed on the fuse label and on the fuse carrier. Unless necessary for the protection of particular equipment, miniature circuit breakers used for individual circuits in a panel or control desk shall not trip on over-voltage or under-voltage.

Bases for solid links shall not be interchangeable with those for fuses. Fuses and links in the same circuit shall be mounted opposite each other in separate adjacent rows and shall not alternate in the same row. At least 10% and not less than two unallocated miniature circuit breakers or fuses and links shall be provided in each panel distribution board. Miniature circuit breakers and fuses of similar size and rating shall be of the same make and type.

At least 10%, and not less than two, spare fuses and links of each rating shall be provided and fitted in clips inside the panel.

Each instrument requiring a power supply shall be individually wired and protected so that, in



the event of a failure in one circuit, the remainder are unaffected. Power supply circuits shall be of sufficient rating that any protective device may operate without reducing the voltage at the terminals of any other component to an unacceptable level. Remote alarms shall be operated on failure of the electrical supply to a panel or to any internal sub-circuit.

Clearly identifiable, switched socket outlets of 15A minimum rating to comply with IS 4615, supplied at the main cabinet operating voltages shall be fitted within the panel at the rate of one for each operating voltage per metre of panel length; for a panel whose length is less than one metre, one switched socket outlet for each main operating voltage shall be provided.

Suitable socket outlets for portable tools and handlamps shall be provided as specified elsewhere.

## **G2.8 Panel isolation**

Clearly-labelled isolating circuit breakers shall be provided for each incoming power supply. Switches shall be of the quick make-and-break type with spring-loaded contacts that close fully without requiring full operation of the handle. The handle and cover shall be interlocked so that the handle cannot be operated when the cover is open and the cover cannot be opened unless the switch is in the 'off' position. The 'on' and 'off' positions of each switch shall be indicated clearly.

Circuit breakers for panel power supplies shall be mounted near an access point and in positions where they may be operated easily from a standing position.

Plug-in isolating links or devices of an approved type shall be provided in any circuit that may still be live when the power supply isolators are in the 'off' position, as, for example, in circuits controlling equipment whose power supply is independent of the panel. Such links or devices shall be properly screened and, if not incorporated in or adjacent to their associated outgoing terminals, shall be labelled with suitable warning notices.

Any item of panel equipment to which panel internal wiring is connected with a plug and socket instead of terminals shall be wired in flexible cable of adequate rating between the 'free' plug and a socket mounted adjacent to the device.

The power supply connector shall be a socket.

## **G2.9 Panel terminal blocks**

External wiring for panel power supplies shall be terminated on the appropriate isolator. Signal cables from strain gauges, analysers, resistance thermometers, re-transmitting slide-wires and thermocouples may be terminated at their appropriate instruments.

A terminal block shall be provided as the interface between the corresponding conductors of each internal and external wire and each internal and external connection except those listed above. The terminal blocks shall be mounted vertically where possible and not nearer than 230mm to the floor or less than 230mm from an incoming cable gland.

Terminal block rows shall be spaced apart by not less than 150mm and arranged to permit convenient access to wires and terminals and to enable ferrule numbers to be read without

difficulty.

Other circuits shall be grouped on the terminal blocks according to the classification given in the clause for 'Panel internal wiring' which shall be clearly marked along the corresponding section of each terminal board. Groups of different voltages on the same board shall be separated by insulated barriers.

All connections shall be made from the front of terminal blocks and no live metal shall be exposed at the back. All terminal blocks shall be of the type which clamps the wire securely and without damage between two plates by means of a captive screw and which permits removal of any terminal without disturbance to adjacent terminals. Pinch-screw type terminal blocks will not be accepted. Terminal mouldings shall be in melamine to ISO 2112:1990, polyamide or equivalent. Terminal rails shall be hot-dip galvanised. Current bars between the two connection points of each terminal block shall be of copper or brass with tin/lead alloy plating. All steel parts shall be zinc-plated and passivated with a yellow chromate layer. Terminal blocks for input and output analogue signals and for circuits containing volt-free contacts internal or external to the cabinet shall be of the Klippon type SAKCor equivalent which permit the connection of a test milliammeter or continuity meter without disconnecting any wiring. Terminal blocks for power supplies for equipment external to the panel shall permit the isolation of the item of external equipment without affecting the operation of any other circuit within or outside the panel.

No more than one core of external cables, or one internal wire shall be connected to any terminal. If terminal blocks are used as common points for two or more circuits, individual terminals with the appropriate number of permanent cross-connections shall be provided. The lengths of exposed cable cores shall be sufficient to reach any terminal in the appropriate row or rows. The cores shall be formed into a neat loom and a separate loom shall be provided for each cable. Identification ferrules as specified in the clause for 'Panel wiring identification and termination' shall be fitted on each core of all external cables and on each internal wire.

The size of the terminals shall be appropriate to the size and rating of the cable cores which will be connected to them but shall not be smaller than Klippon type SAK2.5 or equivalent unless otherwise agreed with the Engineer.

Each row of terminal blocks shall contain at least 25% spare terminals over the number required for terminating all cores of external cables in that row. Unless otherwise specified or shown in the Specification drawings, each external cable shall contain at least 20% spare circuits, with a minimum of one spare circuit.

Terminal blocks shall be numbered consecutively in a sequence different from that used for identifying wiring. The terminal numbers, voltage grouping and terminal board layout shall correspond precisely with wiring diagrams so that quick and accurate identification of wiring can be made.

All the terminal boards shall be provided with covers of transparent insulating material that does not sustain combustion and shall be sectionalised where possible to give access to groups of terminals without uncovering all boards. Terminals which may be live when the panel is isolated from its main supplies shall be suitably labelled to minimise the risk of accidental contact.

**G2.10 Panel internal wiring**

Panel circuits shall be segregated into the following categories:-

**Group 1: Power control and very-high-level signal wiring (above 50V):**

- 1.1 ac power supplies;
- 1.2 dc power supplies;
- 1.3 ac current signals above 50mA (such as CT circuits);
- 1.4 ac voltage and control signals above 50V (such as PT circuits).

**Group 2: High-level signal wiring (6V to 50V dc):**

- 2.1 signals from conventional electronic transmitters and controllers (such as 4mA to 20mA);
- 2.2 circuits to alarm annunciators and other solid-state devices (excluding those in categories 2.1, 2.5, 3.1, 3.2 and 3.3);
- 2.3 digital signals;
- 2.4 emergency shut-down and tripping circuits;
- 2.5 on/off control circuits;
- 2.6 intrinsically safe circuits;
- 2.7 speech-frequency circuits.

**Group 3: Low-level signal wiring (5V dc and below):**

- 3.1 signals from thermocouples;
- 3.2 signals from resistance thermometers and re-transmitting slide-wires;
- 3.3 signals from analytical equipment and strain gauges.

For Group 3 wiring, internal connections to the instruments shall be made by one of the following methods:

- (a) the twisted, screened conductors of the external cable shall be led direct to their appropriate instruments via ducting systems installed for this purpose during construction of the panel;
- (b) the conductors of the external cables shall be terminated on terminals segregated from all other categories and the connections to the appropriate instruments shall be made using twisted pairs with individual screening installed for this purpose during construction of the panel.

Internal wiring for all circuits in Group 2 except those sharing a common connection shall be multi-stranded, twisted pair, 0.75mm<sup>2</sup> minimum copper conductor with HPDE or PVC-insulated cable of adequate grade and rating in accordance with BS 6004:2000. Wiring for circuits in other Groups or sharing a common connection shall be run in stranded, 1.0mm<sup>2</sup> minimum copper conductor with 250V grade, PVC-insulated cable of adequate grade and rating. Wiring sheath colours shall be black for ac circuits, and grey for dc circuits (excluding thermocouple circuits) and blue for Group 2.6 circuits. Circuits operating at 240Vac and 110V dc, shall also be physically segregated from each other and from other circuits. Access to wiring and components of circuits having voltages exceeding 240V shall not be possible unless and until the circuit has been isolated.

Separate ducts, trunking, cable looms, tray work and the like shall be provided within the panel for each category with at least 150mm between parallel paths of Group 1 and those of any other Group. Intrinsically-safe circuits and their terminals shall be segregated from other circuits and terminals.

All wiring shall be neatly and securely fixed by insulated cleats, bunched and secured by approved plastic strapping or run in approved insulated wiring trunking or non-corrodible flexible tubing. Not more than 75% of the capacity of trunking, ducts, looming, or tubing shall be used. Insulated earth wiring shall be so arranged that access to any equipment or connection point or the removal of any item of equipment is unimpeded. Wiring for future equipment shall be secured and terminated on terminal blocks. Lacing for wiring looms shall be of rot-proof cord or plastic strips. Inter-section wiring in multi-section cabinets shall be via a terminal block in each section.

#### **G2.11 Panel wiring identification and termination**

Identification ferrules shall be fitted at both ends of each wire. The numbers or letters used shall correspond with the appropriate wiring diagram. The ferrules shall be of plastic insulating material with permanent black characters on a colour-coded background for numbers and on a white background for letters, unaffected by oil or water. They shall be so arranged that they can be read logically from left to right when viewed normally.

The system of wire identification shall be such that wires in the same circuit on opposite sides of a terminal shall have the same reference, and this system shall be continued through all external cabling.

Terminal ferrules (spade, tongue, crimped connections) shall be provided on each conductor.

#### **G2.12 Panel earthing**

A continuous copper earth bar of not less than 25mm x 6mm cross section shall run the full length of each panel and shall be securely fixed and bonded electrically to the main frame. The cable gland-plates and the earth bar shall be provided with suitable brass terminals of not less than 6mm diameter for connecting the metal cladding or armouring of all incoming and outgoing cables to the station earthing system.

A second continuous copper earth bar of not less than 25mm x 6mm cross section, electrically isolated from the steelwork of the panel and metal cladding and armouring of cables, shall be provided for earthing the signal earth connection of each instrumentation and control device and the screen(s) of each instrument cable not earthed elsewhere to the station instrumentation earth plate. The earth bar shall have sufficient brass terminals as specified above for each instrumentation and control device and the screen of every shielded cable plus 25% spare terminals.

In multi-section panels, each earth bar shall be electrically bonded to the corresponding bars in the adjacent section(s).

Instrumentation and instrument cable screen earthing shall comply with BS 6739: 1986, Section 10, unless otherwise stated in this clause.

**G2.13 Panel heating**

Each panel shall have one or more thermostatically-controlled tubular or ribbed panel heaters to prevent condensation and assist ventilation and which shall be adequate for ambient temperatures down to 5°C. The heater rating shall not exceed 0.2W/mm and the surface temperature of any part which could be contacted accidentally shall not exceed 60°C. Heaters shall be so situated that no deterioration can be caused to any equipment or wiring in the panel. The heating circuits shall be switched and fused independently of the instrumentation

and control equipment and manually controlled by an enclosed switch mounted in an accessible position within the panel. Thermostats shall be mounted remote from the heaters and other sources of heat and shall be fully adjustable over a range of not less than 0°C to 50°C. Thermostats shall cut out each heater when the internal temperature of the panel exceeds a pre-set value; differential thermostats shall be used to maintain the panel internal temperature at a pre-set value above the external ambient temperature.

If the permanent power supply is not available at the time of installation of the panel and condensation is detected, a temporary power supply shall be connected to the panel of sufficient rating to operate the heaters.

**G2.14 Panel lighting**

Each panel shall be adequately illuminated internally, as evenly and as free from dazzle as possible, by fixed fluorescent lighting controlled from totally-enclosed light switches and by totally-enclosed door-operated switches positioned so as not to interfere with access. There shall also be one installed inspection lamp per three metres of panel length or part thereof with adequate flexible connection cable to reach any point in the panel. The control switch for an inspection lamp shall form part of the lamp assembly. Lighting circuits shall be fused independently of any instrumentation and control circuit and designed to allow lamps to be replaced safely and shall be fed from a distribution board and circuit breaker connected on the live side of the main panel ac supply circuit breaker.

**G2.15 Panel ventilation**

Each panel shall be provided with ventilation fans as required to ensure that equipment within the panel is maintained within manufacturer's recommendations, with due regard to the environment in which the panel will be mounted. Fans shall be controlled by a suitably-labelled enclosed switch mounted internally in an accessible position.

Fans shall be mounted with their axis horizontal and shall be arranged to draw clean air into the panel. Air entries shall have filters which can be renewed from outside the panel and shall be designed to prevent the entry of rain, spray, injurious fluids, sand or dust.

**G2.16 Panel piping and tubing**

Panels containing equipment using a supply of compressed air shall have a common air pressure-reducing station with duplicate pressure-reducing valves and filters. The pressure-reducing station shall also include isolating valves upstream and downstream of each filter/reducing-valve set, pressure-relief valve, pressure indicator and low-pressure alarm unit for the low-pressure header and a pressure indicator for the high-pressure pipework. The pressure-reducing station components shall be mounted in a clear space inside the panel,

supported on a suitable framework between the lower horizontal row of instruments and the main low-pressure header.

All piping, fittings and valves downstream of the pressure-reducing station shall be of brass, copper or plastic. PTFE tape shall not be used downstream of the main filters.

The low-pressure header shall be brass and shall be near the panel floor with drain valves and tundishes piped to a drain. Branch air headers shall be of brass (15mm diameter minimum) and shall run vertically from the header to the instrument. The low pressure header and each branch shall have a 6mm minimum, non-ferrous shut-off valve for each instrument requiring an air supply and a compression coupling for each air-purge connection. At least 10% spare connections for possible future instruments shall be provided in each panel section. Any header dismantled before shipment shall have brass unions or flanges at each panel-section junction.

Panel-mounted instruments shall be piped to bulkhead fittings on a gland plate during assembly at the manufacturer's works. Piping shall be colour-coded in accordance with Recommended Practice ISA-RP 7.2 issued by the Instrument Society of America and shall be segregated from wiring so that any leakage is harmless. Each panel-mounted pressure gauge shall have a stainless steel flush-mounted shut-off and fine-regulating valve mounted vertically below. A drip tray shall be provided below each row of gauges.

Exhaust and de-pressurising pipework shall be routed out of the panel.

## **G2.17 Panel labels**

Labels shall be provided for every panel to describe the duty or otherwise identify the panel and its sections and every instrument, component and item of equipment mounted internally and externally. The Contractor shall submit drawings to show the general arrangement of all labels with their proposed inscription clearly identified. Wording shall be clear, concise and unambiguous and shall be subject to review by the Engineer before manufacture. Each label shall be permanently secured to the surface near the item to which it refers. Externally-fitted labels shall be of perspex or other approved transparent plastic, with letters and numbers rear-engraved and filled with black. The rear surface of each perspex label shall be finished with a coat of paint of the same colour as the panel external finish. Instrument duty labels fitted externally shall be below the item to which they refer. Embossed tape or similar adhesive labels will not be approved.

Laminated materials or rear-engraved and filled plastic shall be used for internally-fitted labels, which shall be white with engraved black letters.

Labels conforming with the requirements of the preceding paragraphs or other approved means shall be provided:

- to describe or identify circuits or circuit components;
- to identify dc polarity;
- to warn or remind about dangerous or potentially-dangerous circumstances;
- wherever elsewhere specified.

Unless otherwise specified, all engraving shall be in plain block letters, 4mm high. The minimum practicable number of different sizes shall be used.

Manufacturers' nameplates shall not be fitted on panel external surfaces.

**G2.18 Panel finish**

For control and instrument panels, desks and cubicles a hard, smooth, durable finish, free of blemishes, shall be provided. Before painting, all external welds and any rough areas shall be smoothed, and all surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned and free from scale, contaminates, corrosion or grease. If rust-proof or Zintec steel has not been used in the construction, the panel shall be treated with a passivating agent such as phosphoric acid. All internal surfaces shall have a minimum of three coats of paint of which the first shall be an approved anti-rusting priming coat and the final coat shall be an opaque gloss white enamel. All external surfaces shall have not less than five coats of paint of which the first shall be an approved etch-priming coat, and the second and third suitable undercoats, all of which shall be rubbed smooth when dry before application of the next coat. The undercoats shall be easily distinguished in shade or colour from the priming and finishing coats. The two final coats shall be of stove enamel paint, gloss or semi-matt finish, to a colour and finish to be advised by the Engineer. Stoving shall be carried out in accordance with the recommendation of the paint manufacturer. The overall dry film thickness (DFT) shall be between 85 and 120 microns.

Nuts, bolts, washers and other fixing devices which may have to be removed for transit or maintenance purposes shall be galvanised or otherwise finished to an approved standard.

A 500ml tin of matching touch-up paint shall be provided and packed with each panel.

The colour of glass reinforced plastic panels shall be to the approval of the Engineer.

**G3.0 INSTRUMENTATION EQUIPMENT****G3.1 Components, equipment and system design**

All equipment shall be designed for rapid fault-diagnosis and replacement of major sub-assemblies and components, which shall be mounted on printed-circuit boards or plug-in type bases with high-grade, non-ageing plugs and sockets with gold-plated contacts. Components on printed circuit boards shall be tropicalised and varnished. All transformers shall be double-wound with an earthed screen between primary and secondary windings. All transformers shall be vacuum-impregnated and all except power transformers shall be epoxy-resin encapsulated. Routine maintenance and repair shall, as far as possible, require neither highly-skilled personnel nor soldering and wire-wrapping techniques.

Integrated circuits shall be used and, except in protection and shut-down circuits, solid-state devices shall be used in preference to moving-armature relays and electro-mechanical timers. Relays shall be of the plug-in type and shall have polycarbonate covers. When used in tropical locations, the relays shall be hermetically sealed. The standards of reliability for moving armature relays and electro-mechanical timers shall not be less than specified in IEC 60947-4:1999 or equivalent for medium-voltage contactors of Class 3 mechanical endurance. Operating coils shall be vacuum impregnated or epoxy-resin encapsulated.

Electronic units shall be fully solid state and the selection and installation of components shall give the maximum life possible. Wire-wound resistors shall be on ceramic formers and embedded in fire-proof and damp-proof material.

Plant state indication systems shall be designed so that a failure of any component or circuit or power supply associated with the indication system cannot lead to the masking or inhibition of the indication of a potentially dangerous state.

Plant protection and control systems shall be designed so that their outputs are de-energised or neutralised whenever a failure occurs of any component or circuit or power supply associated with that protection or control circuit.

No single equipment fault shall prevent the correct operation of any protection or shut-down circuit whenever necessitated by a plant fault condition or control action.

Under emergency, failure or shut-down circumstances, each regulating device shall move to the appropriate safe condition or stay-put in accordance with the relevant part of the Specification.

### **G3.2 Instruments and ancillaries — general**

All instruments, gauges and control equipment which perform similar duties shall be of uniform type and manufacture throughout the Works in order to facilitate maintenance and the stocking of spare parts.

All equipment shall be fully tropicalised and suitable for the worst environmental operating conditions. Panel-mounted instruments shall have damp-proof and dust-proof cases. Instruments mounted outside instrument panels shall have weatherproof and dust-proof cases. Instrument cases shall be of corrosion-resistant material or finish. Instrument screws (unless forming part of a magnetic circuit) shall be of brass or bronze. Access to terminal compartments of instruments mounted outside panels or other enclosures shall not expose any working part. Moving parts and contacts shall be adequately protected from the ingress of dust.

Unless otherwise specified, instruments shall be finished in the manufacturer's standard colour. Instrument dials shall be of such material that no peeling or discolouration will take place with age under tropical conditions.

Plant-mounted indicators and gauges shall be sized to give full legibility when viewed from a position with convenient and easy access or from the point at which any operation requiring observation of the gauge is performed. The minimum diameter for any gauge shall be 100mm except where forming part of standard instruments and accessories such as air-sets.

Dials and bezels shall be of bronze and internal components shall be of stainless steel, bronze or other corrosion-resistant material.

Unless otherwise specified, all functions shall be transmitted electrically and all analogue signal-transmission systems shall be in accordance with IEC 60381-1:1982 or equivalent and shall use a signal of 4mA to 20mA dc or communication protocol FieldBus, DeviceNet or equivalent using RS485 connection. Where possible, measuring systems shall be designed so that any necessary power supply is taken from the appropriate instrument panel.

Transmitting devices shall have integral indicators to monitor the output signal or connections



suitable for use with a portable test meter, and shall be capable of meeting the performance requirements specified in the appropriate part of IEC 60770-1:1999 or equivalent.

Equipment mounted in enclosures shall be suitable for continuous operation at the maximum internal temperature possible in service, due account being taken of internally-generated heat and heat dissipated by other plant. All components shall be rated adequately and circuits shall be designed so that change of component characteristics within the manufacturers' tolerances shall not affect the performance of plant. All equipment shall be designed to operate without forced (or fan) cooling.

Equipment provided with anti-condensation heaters shall be capable of operating without damage if the heaters are left on continuously. Unless provided with unalterable factory configured ranges, measuring instruments shall have zero and span adjustment.

Instruments not mounted in panels shall be supplied complete with all brackets, stands, supporting steelwork and weatherproof enclosures (separate from the instrument cases) necessary for securing them in their working positions and affording complete protection at all times including periods of servicing, adjustment, calibration and maintenance. The installation arrangements for meters measuring conductivity, pH, dissolved oxygen, chlorine residual and ionic concentration shall include a sample bench and other facilities for operating portable test meters. Each installation shall incorporate a valve and pipework for obtaining a sample representative of the fluid at the position of the permanent meter, tundish and drain. If the measuring and sampling points are remote from each other, the test and sample facilities shall be provided at both points. Sample transport times shall be minimised by provision of a by-pass and drain with control and isolating valves and a local flowmeter to enable the correct sample flow to be adjusted.

## **G4.0 FLOW-MEASURING EQUIPMENT**

### **G4.1 Differential-pressure flowmeters**

Flowmeters of the differential-pressure type shall be designed and installed in compliance with BS 1042-1.4:1992 or equivalent. Primary devices shall be a stainless steel carrier-ring type orifice assembly with a stainless steel orifice plate or venturi tube which shall include two sets of gaskets, fixing bolts and isolating valves for each primary device. All materials shall be appropriate to the metered fluid and service conditions. Full details of the calculations and location of the differential-pressure flowmeter shall be supplied to the Engineer.

Orifice assemblies shall have identification tags showing the direction of flow, orifice diameter and position of drain hole.

Differential-pressure transmitters shall have over-range protection up to 1.5 times the maximum line pressure. They shall convert the differential pressure into an analogue electrical or pneumatic signal. They shall be adjacent to the primary element and shall be connected to the tappings via a five valve manifold with provision for connection of a portable instrument for calibration purposes.

Where the transmitted signal is to be linearised, a square root extraction device shall provide a 4-20 mA output signal proportional to flow of the same electrical range as the input signal.

Differential pressure switches shall have contacts with differing 'cut-in' and 'cut-out' values. The nominal values at which differential pressure switches operate shall be fully adjustable over the whole range of the instrument and the set value shall be clearly indicated by means of a scale and pointer. Contacts of differential pressure switches shall be hermetically sealed.

The Contractor shall arrange for calibration tests of primary elements to be carried out and shall provide certified records, in triplicate, of the test readings.

After installation the calibration of each flowmeter system shall be proved to the satisfaction of the Engineer by applying fixed measured differential pressures to the input of the converters.

## **G4.2 Electromagnetic flow meters**

### **G4.2.1 Construction**

Flowmeters shall operate on the electromagnetic induction principle and shall consist of a measuring sensor and measuring transmitter complying with ISO 6817:1997. The flowmetering system shall provide pulse and analogue current outputs proportional to volume and rate of flow respectively.

Measuring sensors shall have a full bore stainless steel metering tube and non-conductive, abrasion-resistant lining to suit the fluid being metered. For potable water applications, the lining material shall be of an approved material. For other applications the lining material shall be suitable for the fluid being measured.

Measuring sensors shall be fitted with an anti-roll system to prevent damage during storage and shall be flanged to BS EN 1092:2002. The flanges shall be compatible with those specified for the associated pipework.

Measuring sensors shall have factory-sealed power and signal cables. Unless otherwise specified, the cable lengths shall be sufficient to permit termination external to the chamber, either at a junction box or at the measuring transmitter.

Measuring sensors installed within a chamber shall have a degree of protection IP68 and shall be suitable for indefinite submersion under a head of water equal to the chamber depth or 3 metres whichever is the greater.

Measuring sensors shall be installed on a steel cradle or concrete plinth with upstream and downstream straight pipe lengths not less than those recommended by the manufacturer. When fitted in lined non-metallic or internally-coated pipework, measuring sensors shall have an earthing electrode or corrosion-resistant earthing rings.

Measuring sensors shall be bonded by tinned copper braid links at each end to the adjacent pipework to ensure a good connection between the body and the metered liquid.

Measuring sensors installed in a cathodic protected pipeline shall have isolation and bonding in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer.

The measuring transmitter supply voltage shall be 230V 50Hz unless otherwise specified. The measuring transmitter shall provide a precise current input to the field winding of the

measuring sensor and shall convert the resultant signal from the electrodes to analogue and pulse outputs in accordance with IEC 60381-1:1982. The signal processing facilities of the converter shall ensure that the output signals are unaffected by interfering voltages, stratified flow, changes in fluid electrical conductivity within the limit stated, non-homogeneity of the fluid and the presence of ferrous particles. The instrument zero shall be set at the manufacturer's premises and thereafter this zero shall be maintained automatically without interruption of flow or output signals. The zero and output signals shall be unaffected by partly-fouled electrodes.

The following measuring transmitter features shall be provided as a minimum; additional requirements may be stated elsewhere in the Specification:-

- Pulsed d.c. field excitation.
  - Scaled pulse output for integration counter drive.
  - Capability of bi-directional measurement with differing forward and reverse ranges and with local and remote indication of flow reversal.
  - Contact operation at a programmable measured value.
  - Integral display of flow and integrated quantity.
  - Galvanic isolation between each output circuit and between the electrode circuit and output circuit.
  - Output circuit isolation from earth within the instrument but suitable for earthing at any point in the external circuit.
  - Key entry for basic parameters.
  - Commissioning and re-scaling to require no special programming knowledge.
  - Adjustable low flow cut-off.
  - Self-diagnosis.
  - Continuously adjustable velocity and flow range settings.
  - Terminals accommodated in a compartment separate from electronic components.
- 
- Outputs including:
 

analogue	-	4-20mA
pulse	-	two programmable outputs
alarms	-	two outputs programmable for high/low
		flow, polarity, forward/reverse,
		instrument fault, liquid sensing fault
		condition including partially empty pipe.

### G4.2.2 Performance

The following performance shall be available as a minimum; superior standards shall be met where stated elsewhere in the Specification or where so required by the metering and/or control requirements.

Overall flow system accuracy for local and remote display (including pulse counter):-

True flow as % of full scale setting	Maximum error
50 to 100%	+/- 0.5 % of true value
10 to 50%	+/- 1.0 % of true value
5 to 10%	+/- 2.0 % of true value
Repeatability	Not exceeding $\square\square\square$ 0.2 of true value

Measuring transmitters shall be interchangeable with those of any other electromagnetic flowmeter of the same design. Calibration checking shall require no auxiliary test meter or simulator.

Plant-mounted measuring transmitter enclosures shall have a degree of protection of not less than IP 65 to BS EN 60529:1992. Measuring transmitters installed within a panel located in a building may be of the rack-mounted type having a degree of protection not less than IP 20. Measuring transmitters shall not be located in flowmeter chambers or areas subject to flooding.

### G4.2.3 Testing

Each detector head and converter shall be wet-tested and calibrated in the presence of the Engineer's Representative, with the velocity programmed to a value not exceeding that appropriate to the specified application in a permanent test rig having a valid Quality Assurance Certificate or Calibration Certificate issued by the National Standards or Calibration Authority of the country of origin of the flowmeter. If a certified test rig is not available in that country, the Contractor shall arrange for the tests and calibration to be performed on a certified test rig in United Kingdom or, subject to the Engineer's permission, in a third country. (Two inspection engineers from the Engineer's Representative will be arranged to witness the wet-test and the expense to incur for their transportation, accommodation and the like shall be deemed to be included in the Contract.)

### G4.3 Variable-area flowmeters

Variable-area flowmeters shall have a float moving vertically in a tapered tube, the position of the float being proportional to the flow. The meter tube shall be provided with a scale calibrated for the specific fluid in volumetric flow units. The calibration conditions shall be engraved on the tube.

The flowmeter shall have glass or metallic tubes according to the particular application.

Metering tubes shall be removable for range change or cleaning without disassembling the

meter or removing it from the line. Metering tubes shall have ends of equal cross-sectional area and, if 'O' ring seals are used, tube-retainer springs shall be outside the fluid stream. End fittings shall be rotatable to any angle. Connections shall be horizontal and plugged vertical openings shall be provided for cleaning purposes.

Glass metering tubes shall be of borosilicate glass and shall be adequately shielded with safety glass on the reading side and amply vented on sides, back and bottom.

Variable-area flowmeters shall be installed in locations free from vibration and with sufficient clearance for the removal of the float. If used in conjunction with a flow-regulating valve, the valve and meter shall be close together, with the valve downstream of the meter. There shall be a minimum of five diameters of straight pipework upstream of the meter. Pipework shall be supported, having regard to the weight of the meter. The outlet connection shall be at the top of the meter.

Variable area flowmeter shall be provided with adjustable volt-free contacts to detect low flow with an accuracy tolerance of better than  $0.1 \text{ m}^3/\text{hr}$ .

#### **G4.4 Helix-type flowmeters**

Flowmeters or water meters of the volumetric rotary-piston type shall be designed for long life, maintained accuracy at all flow rates, minimum wear and shall conform with the relevant parts of BS 5728-3:1997.

Each water meter shall be provided with body material suitable for the application and size of meter.

Water meters for domestic installations shall be provided with inlet and outlet connections threaded according to the nominal pipe size for the meter. Each meter shall be provided with a 7-digit counter, the least significant figure representing 1 litre increments unless otherwise agreed with the Engineer.

Provision for pulse output for remote reading of totalised flow shall be provided where specified.

For larger flows in supply and distribution systems, in-line helical-vane rotary type meters shall be provided.

The measuring mechanism shall comprise a magnetic drive between the measuring element and the sealed counter unit. Counter units shall provide a clearly legible seven-figure counter incorporating a centre sweep hand which enables precise readings to be taken. The meter body shall be cast in spheroidal graphite iron BS EN 1563:1997 with end flanges drilled to suit the piping installations.

Pulse output units with submersible connections shall be provided where specified for all meters installed in flowmeter chambers.

Accuracy of helix-type flowmeters shall be  $\pm 2\%$  of peak flow or better.

## **G5.0 LEVEL-MEASURING EQUIPMENT**

### **G5.1 Float-operated level indicators**

Float operated level indicator shall comprise a float actuated with a float operating on fixed guide wires. The float shall be connected by a stainless steel cable to an indicator unit which moves up and down a marker board fitted to the external wall of the tank as the product level falls and rises. Pulleys shall be of stainless steel construction.

The switch assemblies actuated by the moving indicator shall be used for fitting to the marker board to provide high or low alarms and control initiation.

Indicator scale shall be of aluminium, brass or cedar wood construction graduated in metric linear or volumetric units.

The range of the instrument shall be 0 up to 20m (or equivalent volumetric units) and the accuracy/repeatability shall be  $\pm 10\text{mm}$ .

### **G5.2 Float operated level transmitters**

Float operated level transmitters shall comprise a float and counterweight or tension device. Floats and counterweights shall be of corrosion resistant material or shall be coated with epoxy resin.

The float shall be suspended by a stainless steel wire or perforated tape which shall operate the transmitter installed above the float stilling well or measuring chamber.

The transmitter shall provide a 4 to 20mA d.c. output signal proportional to the level measurement range and shall be housed in an enclosure protected to IP 65, BS EN 60529:1992.

The accuracy of the measuring system shall be as specified for the particular application.

### **G5.3 Ultrasonic level measuring system**

Ultrasonic level measuring systems applied to open channel flow measurement or liquid level measurement shall comprise a sensor and control unit.

The sensor shall be suitable for flange or bracket mounting as required and have a minimum protection to BS EN 60529:1992, IP 66.

The accuracy of the sensor shall be  $\pm 1\%$  or better.

The associated control unit shall be mounted in an enclosure with protection to BS EN 60529:1992, IP 65. It shall be programmable with an integral programming keyboard and include a digital display, 5 No adjustable relays for alarm, control and system fault and shall provide an isolated 4 to 20mA dc output signal.

For flow applications a totaliser pulse output shall be provided.

The design and application of ultrasonic level meters shall take into account the vessel or channel construction, the material, size, shape, environment, process fluid or material, the presence of foam, granules, size etc.

The installation shall avoid any degradation of performance from spurious reflections, absorption, sound velocity variations, sensor detection area, temperature fluctuations, specific gravity changes and condensation.

If turbulence exists, shielding, stilling tubes or other measures shall be provided to avoid effects on the measurement.

#### **G5.4 Conductivity type level detection system**

The level detection system shall consist of one or more sensing electrodes and controller containing switching circuitry and control relay(s).

Electrode rods shall be stainless steel, or other material suitable for application. Materials used for electrode heads shall be non-corrodible.

For deep well application, borehole type electrodes shall be used. These shall be shrouded to prevent spurious operation and provided with a stainless steel cable in accordance with BS 6920. The cables shall be adequately supported in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations.

A clear stilling tube of not less than 75mm diameter adequately fixed shall be provided to smooth surface turbulence and protect the instruments from damage by the pumping plant installation and maintenance activities.

Controllers located within panels shall be of the chassis type and shall have a minimum degree of protection to BS EN 60529:1992 IP20, adjustable sensitivity and response time settings, facility for setting fail safe operation at high or low level, light emitting diode output relay operating indication and double pole voltage-free changeover type output contacts. The controller shall be supplied from the mains.

Controllers not mounted in panels shall be provided with surface mounting enclosures having a degree of protection to BS EN 60529:1992 IP54 for indoor location and IP65 for outdoor location.

#### **G5.5 Pressure transducer type level and depth measuring systems**

Pressure transducer level and depth measuring systems shall comprise a strain gauge or linear voltage displacement transformer (LVDT) type transducer and a signal conditioning or power supply transmitter. Signal conditioning and power supply units if externally mounted shall have a degree of protection not less than IP56 or better to BS EN 60529:1992.

Where transducers are located in an area susceptible to lightning strikes, LVDT type transducers shall be used.

Transducer housings shall be of the all-welded Grade 316 stainless steel or equivalent and shall be hermetically sealed. Non-interacting zero and span adjustments shall be provided on each transmitter. The transducer measuring device shall be isolated from the process fluid by a non-corrosive barrier diaphragm.

The transmitter shall produce a 4 to 20mA signal proportional to level or depth.

For hazardous area installation a 4 to 20mA repeater power supply unit shall be provided giving a fully floating 17.5V supply to power the sensor and shall have a fully floating 4 to

20mA d.c. repeater output. The repeater unit shall be certified to CENELEC standards. If mounted externally to a control panel, the appropriate protection shall be provided.

The mean time between failure for measuring systems shall be not less than 15 years.

The performance of the measuring system shall be as given below or better:-

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| ▪ Accuracy               | ±0.25% of calibrated span.  |
| ▪ Repeatability          | ±0.1% at maximum span.  |
| ▪ Stability              | ±0.1% of span over 6 month period.                                      |
| ▪ Over pressure          | Sustain a 200% over pressure without damage.                            |
| ▪ RF1/EM1                | Less than 1% of span with 500 MHz at 5 Watts direct contact.            |
| ▪ Power supply variation | 0.01% per volt variation.   |
| ▪ Load variation effect  | ±0.0002% per Ohm of loop resistance variation.                          |
| ▪ Temperature            | -29°C to +82°C; total thermal error of □0.75% of span over 0°C to 50°C. |

Hydrostatic type pressure transducers shall be suspended by a polyurethane vented and screened cable which has been factory sealed to the transducer to provide a waterproof assembly to IP68. The transducer shall be designed for immersion in water a minimum depth of 10m below its maximum installed level or depth.

A clear stilling tube of not less than 75mm diameter shall be provided to smooth surface turbulence to avoid affects on measurement.

Transmitters shall be either integral to the transducer or shall be located in an accessible position in the immediate vicinity of the transducer. The transmitter shall be mounted in a housing compatible with the location.

At the point of entry to the structure the transducer cable shall be adequately supported to prevent slippage. The cable entry opening shall be sealed.

## **G5.6 Hydro-static level transmitters**

Hydro-static level transmitters shall be flange-mounted on the vessel and shall comprise a diaphragm operated sensor and an electronics module. The materials of construction shall be compatible with the fluid with which they are in contact.

The output of the transmitter shall generally be 4-20 mA d.c. proportional to liquid level. Where the transmitter is fitted to a horizontal cylindrical storage tank for contents measurement, a converter shall be incorporated in the measurement loop to give a linear output proportional to contents.

The electronics module with all adjustments and terminations shall be enclosed in a housing with degree of protection of IP 54 for indoor installation, IP 65 for outdoor installation or IP 68 for locations liable to flooding..



The transmitter accuracy shall be  $\pm 0.5\%$  fsd or better.

#### **G5.7 Sight glass level indicators**

Sight glass level indicators shall be provided with a protective housing, borosilicate glass tube and isolating valves.

The gauge shall be suitably calibrated in volumetric S.I. units unless otherwise specified that level units are required.

Where necessary, the gauge shall be provided with flushing and drain points with valves and hose connections.

#### **G5.8 Buoyancy level switches**

Level switches of the buoyancy type shall consist of a mercury switch with changeover action enclosed in a non-corrodible material. A balance weight shall also be incorporated in the switch to counteract the buoyancy effects for the specific gravity of the particular fluid. The connecting cable shall be sealed into the switch.

Buoyancy switches shall be installed with a minimum of two meters of spare connecting cable neatly coiled at a supporting bracket which shall be fitted as shown in the Specification drawings or in a manner as approved by the Engineer. The connecting cable fixing shall facilitate any alteration in operating level within the limit of the spare cable referred to above.

### **G6.0 PRESSURE-MEASURING EQUIPMENT**

#### **G6.1 Pressure gauges and transmitters**

Pressure gauges shall comply with BS EN 837-1:1998. Pressure gauges and transmitters shall have over range protection up to 1.5 times the maximum line pressure and shall be capable of withstanding full line pressure on any side with the other side vented to atmosphere without damage or effect on the calibration. No plastic material shall be used in their construction. Internal parts shall be of stainless steel, bronze or approved corrosion-resistant material.

Where necessary, a special diaphragm shall be used to segregate the gauge tube from corrosive fluid media. In ammonia applications, the diaphragm shall be in stainless steel. In chlorine applications, the diaphragm shall be in silver or tantalum. In sulphur dioxide applications, the diaphragm shall be in tantalum.

The minimum diameter for any pressure gauge shall be 150 mm unless specified otherwise or where the gauge forms part of a standard item of equipment.

Where compensation of more than 2% of the instrument span is needed for the difference in level between the instrument and the tapping point, the reading shall be suitably adjusted and the amount of compensation shall be marked on the dial.

The zero and span of a pressure transmitter shall not change by more than  $\pm 0.1\%$  of the span per  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  change in ambient temperature. After application for 10 minutes of pressure at 130% of maximum pressure, the change in zero and span shall not exceed  $\pm 0.1\%$  of the span.

Pressure transmitters shall have an accuracy typically better than  $\pm 0.25\%$  of span, depending on the application and shall be protected to BS EN 60529:1992, IP 65 standard or higher. For

transmitters installed in locations liable to flooding or underwater applications, they shall be to IP 68 standard and shall operate up to a maximum submergence of 20 metres of water.

Pressure transmitters shall provide a 4 to 20mA d.c. output proportional to the pressure range.

## **G6.2 Pressure switches**

Pressure switches shall be of the electronic type with either a ceramic sensor for low pressures and thin film sensor for pressures above 16 bar. Pressure switches and differential pressure switches shall have contacts with differing 'cut-in' and 'cut-out' pressure values. The nominal pressure values at which pressure and differential pressure switches operate shall be fully adjustable over the whole range of the instrument and the set value shall be clearly indicated by means of a scale and pointer or LED digital display. Pressure switches shall have over range protection.

Pressure switches shall be housed in cast bronze or aluminium alloy enclosures. The degree of protection to BS EN 60529:1992 shall be IP 54 for indoor installation, IP 65 for outdoor installation or IP 68 for locations liable to flooding with a maximum submergence of 20 metres.

## **G7.0 CHEMICAL-MEASURING EQUIPMENT**

### **G7.1 Temperature meters**

Unless otherwise specified, platinum resistance elements shall be used for measuring spans of up to 200°C and chromel-alumel thermocouples for spans exceeding 200°C.

Each temperature sensor, unless otherwise specified, shall have a stainless steel thermowell, or pocket-and-extension assembly, non-corrodible metal sheath and waterproof terminal head. Pockets for steam, oil and pressurised-water lines shall be welded; pockets for other duties shall be screwed.

The sensor assembly shall be designed to permit removal of the temperature element without twisting the leads.

### **G7.2 Platinum resistance thermometers**

Platinum resistance thermometers shall comply with BS 1041 Parts 2 and 3 and BS EN 60751:1996. Sensors shall have a resistance of 100 ohms at 0°C and shall conform to the European standard curve (DIN 43720), where  $\alpha = 0.00385$ . Each element shall be artificially aged during manufacture. Terminal heads and amplifiers shall be designed for four-wire connections between head and amplifier.

Platinum resistance elements shall be spring-loaded and fully encapsulated in ceramic material and the elements and high-temperature-resistant lead wires shall be hermetically sealed. The associated resistance-to-current converters shall have zero and span adjustments and input-output circuit isolation.

### **G7.3 Thermocouples**

Thermocouples shall be of the mineral-insulated type and unless otherwise specified shall be of the chromel-alumel (nickel-chromium v nickel-aluminium) type and shall comply with BS 1041-4:1992 and BS EN 60584-2:1993. Thermocouple junctions shall be welded. Ceramic-insulation material may be used for base-metal thermocouples but low-silicon insulation material shall be used for noble-metal thermocouples. Thermocouple systems shall have thermoelectric ice point reference chambers or receivers or amplifiers with automatic cold junction compensation.

Thermocouple receivers and amplifiers shall also have zero and span adjustment, common and series mode interference rejection circuits, radio-frequency filters, input-output circuit isolation and thermocouple break feature whereby the output is driven to zero or full-scale, as stipulated by the Engineer, when the receiver or amplifier input circuit is broken.

Thermocouple elements shall be electrically isolated from their sheaths but each terminal head shall have facilities for earthing the thermocouple and for terminating the screen of the extension or compensation cable. Amplifier chassis shall have facilities both for being earthed to the instrument case via a capacitor and for being electrically isolated from the instrument case.

### **G7.4 Temperature switches**

Temperature switches shall have contacts with differing 'cut-in' and 'cut-out' values. Their nominal operating points shall be fully adjustable over the whole range of the instrument and the set-value shall be clearly indicated by a dial and pointer.

### **G7.5 Analysis systems**

Instrumentation for the measurement of electro-chemical or water-quality parameters shall be classified as analysis systems and shall be subject to the general requirements below.

Where more than one parameter is being measured and where practical, analysis systems shall be mounted and piped on a backplate which forms part of a rack on which shall also be mounted all accessories such as isolating and flow-control valves, flow and pressure indicators, tundishes and the like. All components, materials and fittings used in the construction of the rack shall be suited to the particular environment.

Each throttling valve shall be downstream of the sensor with which it is used.

Pipework materials and configuration shall be as specified under 'Plant instrument piping', and 'U' sections shall be incorporated to ensure that measuring cells remain full. The rack shall be assembled and tested in the factory. All pipework shall be neatly run and rigidly fastened to the rack with clips. Tundishes shall be incorporated to collect used samples and surplus liquid shall be provided and connected at Site to appropriate approved disposal points. Facilities for taking hand samples and for the checking and servicing of each analyser shall be provided.

Any associated transmitter, signal amplifier, marshalling box, distribution board isolator and

the like shall also be mounted on the rack.

Sample lines shall be as short as possible and the flow rate shall be such as to avoid undue sample transport delays. Sharp bends, changes in cross-section and other features which could lead to the accumulation of debris shall be avoided. Line routing shall avoid sources of light and heat which could encourage biological activity. Where appropriate, bypasses shall be provided around measuring cells to maintain an acceptable sample velocity.

Where possible, any analyser rack shall be installed in a building; if this is not possible, the rack shall be contained in a weatherproof and vandal-proof cubicle whose size or canopy area shall also afford protection against climatic conditions to personnel and test equipment during normal usage and servicing.

Each analyser shall have an integral local indicator or a separate one mounted adjacent to the analyser. Each analyser shall have an RS 232 port as well as terminals for its isolated 4mA to 20mA dc analogue signal.

#### **G7.6 Residual chlorine meters**

Residual chlorine meters shall comprise measuring cells, transmitters and indicator units. These shall be arranged for continuous monitoring of the residual in samples delivered to measuring cells from selected locations.

The residual measuring cells shall be either located in floor-standing plastic/composite cabinets of modular construction or in wall mounted cabinets of the same construction. Each measuring unit shall include a bi-metallic cell generating a micro-ampere signal proportional to the residual chlorine in the sample passed through the cell. Where necessary, each unit shall incorporate the facility for addition of a buffer solution to minimise the effect of pH variations on cell output or to increase cell output at high pH. The sample flow-rate through the cell shall be adjustable by means of a spring and diaphragm regulator or similar device. The materials of construction and sealing shall be compatible with the sample fluid. Cells shall incorporate means of maintaining the electrodes free from fouling.

Each cell shall be capable of measuring both free available chlorine and total chlorine. Where required, a facility for addition of a buffer solution containing potassium iodide shall be installed.

Where reagents are used, they shall require replenishment not more frequently than once per 10 days. The reagent feed shall be stopped automatically in the event that sample flow is lost.

Unless otherwise specified, means shall be provided of detecting that sample flow is healthy and, where applicable, that a reagent supply is available. Volt-free contacts shall be provided for remote signalling of these conditions and/or alarm initiation.

The transmitter shall incorporate an integral indicator and produce a 4–20mA signal proportional to residual chlorine. The unit shall be housed in a surface mounting enclosure protected to IP 54. The fascia shall have indicator lights for high and low alarm conditions, alarm set-point adjustment, lamp-test facility and volt-free changeover contacts for re-transmission of high and low alarm conditions.

The overall accuracy of the residual chlorine meter shall be better than  $\pm 0.04 \times M$  mg/l and the repeatability shall be better than  $\pm 0.02 \times M$  mg/l where M is the maximum value of the selected meter range. Subject to replenishment of reagents, where applicable, the meter performance shall be maintained without manual intervention for a minimum period of 30 days.

#### **G7.7 pH meters**

Each pH-metering system shall comprise electrode assembly, pre-amplifier (if appropriate) and analyser transmitter.

The pH electrode assembly shall be of the same manufacture as the associated pre-amplifier and analyser and, unless otherwise specified, shall be of the flow-through type.

Electrode assemblies shall comprise a glass electrode, a calomel reference electrode and a resistance thermometer for temperature compensation in an immersion type housing.

The measuring electrode shall be of glass and shall be designed for resistance to breakage and low electrical resistance. The flow direction in flow-through electrode assemblies shall be such as to give a self-scouring action at the electrodes.

Electrode assemblies shall be easily detachable from their cells for buffering. Flow-through electrode mountings shall be designed to accommodate a beaker for containing buffer solutions and two such beakers shall be supplied with each flow-through electrode assembly.

The pre-amplifier shall, according to the particular application, be:

- integral with the electrode assembly; or
- in a separate enclosure mounted in the vicinity of the electrode assembly.

The pH analyser when mounted externally to a panel shall be housed in a watertight, GRP housing protected to IP 56 or better and shall be suitable for surface mounting. The analyser shall have an integral indicator and shall produce an isolated 4-20mA output which is linear to pH.

The analyser span shall be adjustable after installation and the range shall be easily varied to cover a minimum pH range of 2 to 12. Calibration adjustments shall be provided for each end of the measuring range.

The overall accuracy of the pH meter shall be better than  $\pm 0.1$  pH and the repeatability shall be better than  $\pm 0.05$  pH. This performance shall be maintained without manual intervention for a minimum period of 30 days. The response time shall not exceed 15 seconds.

Controls shall be provided on the front of the analyser or at the side of the panel-mounted pull-out module for:

- automatic/manual temperature compensation;
- calibration adjustment.

The analyser shall have a run/test switch, to isolate the input from the electrode assembly during fault-finding and adjustment. The switch shall have auxiliary contacts for external use where required.

Each analyser shall be provided with two sets of fully-adjustable relay contacts which may be set to operate anywhere in the range of the analyser.

Where specified, pH-metering systems shall incorporate equipment for automatic pH control in conjunction with equipment specified elsewhere.

### **G7.8 Conductivity meters**

The conductivity measurement system shall comprise conductivity cell, conductivity indicator, interconnecting cable, etc.

Conductivity cells shall be of the same manufacturer as the associated indicator and shall be of the insertion type with facilities including gate valves and packing glands to permit their removal from a running plant, at full line-pressure without allowing an escape of liquid. The cable-entry fitting shall be waterproof.

The mounting positions for electrode cells shall ensure good circulation and that the measurement is representative of stream.

Conductivity transmitters shall have:

- (a) a built-in check circuit which permits calibration checks at any time;
- (b) automatic temperature compensation using a reference of 25°C;
- (c) accuracy within one scale sub-division;
- (d) response time from zero to full-scale in less than seven seconds;
- (e) two SPDT micro-switches, independently adjustable over the full range.

### **G7.9 Turbidity meters**

Turbidity meters shall be continuous flow, continuous reading, on-line instruments using the nephelometric principle of measurement. They shall utilize a single silicon photodiode to detect the level of light scattered by particles at 90° to the incident light beam which in turn converts it to an electrical signal for display.

The turbidity meter shall be provided with an auto-ranging digit display with automatic decimal point positioning to eliminate range-setting and reading errors. Two fully-adjustable volt-free turbidity alarm contacts and instrument failure alarm contacts shall be provided.

A 4mA to 20mA dc output signal programmed to cover any part of the instrument range shall be provided.

Each instrument shall be provided with an integral bubble trap.

Means shall be provided for the checking and adjusting of the instrument calibration which does not require the use of standard solutions and reduces the maintenance of the measuring cell to a minimum.

Enclosures for the turbidimeter and control unit for indoor use shall provide a degree of protection against dust, falling dirt and dripping non-corrosive liquids (NEMA-12) or an equivalent approved by the Engineer.

The overall accuracy shall be better than  $\pm 5\%$  of reading or 0.25 NTU whichever is greater and the repeatability shall be better than  $\pm 2.5\%$  of reading or  $\pm 0.1$  NTU whichever is greater. The instrument performance shall be maintained without manual intervention for a minimum period of 30 days.

#### **G7.10 Aluminium, iron and manganese monitors**

Analytical instruments for the determination of dissolved and total aluminium, iron and manganese shall use colorimetric methods giving output signals and local indications representing concentrations in milligrams per litre. For total measurements, acid at a minimum temperature of 90°C shall be added automatically prior to measurement.

Meters shall be of the continuously-operating type with measurements from any sample point at intervals of not more than 10 minutes. The instrument accuracy shall be  $\pm 0.1$  mg/l or better and the repeatability shall be better than  $\pm 1\%$  of span.

Automatic re-calibration shall be provided with the interval adjustable. Automatic cleaning shall prevent fouling of the optical surfaces. Volt-free contacts shall be incorporated for remote indication of high concentration and instrument failure. The high concentration set-point shall be adjustable over the full range of the instrument.

Built-in storage facilities shall be provided for any reagent used. Reagents shall not require replenishment more frequently than once every ten days.

Meters shall respond to power failure and sample-flow failure and shall restart automatically when healthy conditions are restored.

#### **G7.11 Chlorine leak detectors**

Leak detection equipment shall comprise detector heads and remote mounted transmitters/monitors.

The detector heads shall be of the bimetallic amperometric or solid state types designed for stability and minimum maintenance. The leak detection system shall operate on a continuous basis with a maximum response time to low level leaks of 5 seconds. They shall be wall-mounted and reasonably equidistant from potential sources of chlorine.

Each detector head shall be connected electrically to its associated transmitter/monitor. Multi-point "sniffer" type pumped sampling systems with a common detector head will not be acceptable.

The chlorine detector shall not respond to a leakage of any other gases.

The cells shall be suitable for operation in an indoor environment with a temperature maintained above freezing point (0°C).

The monitoring units shall have wall mounting enclosures protected to at least IP 54 or shall be panel mounted. The units shall not be mounted in the gas hazard area. They shall incorporate solid state circuit cards of the plug-in type. The units shall have self-checking circuitry and detector failure alarm indication, the latter with provision for re-transmission. They shall be equipped with a back-up battery power supply to maintain unit operation for a

minimum period of four hours in the event of mains power failure. In normal operation, the batteries shall be trickle-charged.

The detection systems shall not be susceptible to radio frequency interference.

Leakage alarms shall be adjustable from 5% to 100% of the instrument range to facilitate setting of the following trip levels:

Chlorine	- low level 0.5 ml/m <sup>3</sup>
	- high level 1.0 ml/m <sup>3</sup>

The monitors shall have indicator lights for both alarm levels and at least two sets of volt-free changeover contacts for re-transmission of the alarms to:-

- Ventilation system controls (inhibit action) and external warning lamp;
- Remote monitoring system.

Local alarm indication and contact position shall be maintained until an alarm reset button is activated at the monitor.

The monitors shall incorporate a test button to facilitate the checking of satisfactory operation of the electronic circuits and alarms. Any consumable items that may be required for testing or re-calibration of the leak detection system shall be supplied in a sufficient quantity to last at least twelve months from take-over.

## **G8.0 RECORDING EQUIPMENT**

### **G8.1 Chart recorders**

Chart recorders shall be microprocessor-controlled or have auto-balancing potentiometric movements and conform with BS 90:1975 where applicable and shall be able to pass each test specified in BS EN 60873:1993 or equivalent standard.

Recording instruments shall have an accuracy of  $\pm 0.5\%$  full-scale deflection or better. The operating temperature range shall be 0°C to 50°C.

The recorder shall be equipped with indicating scales and pointers for each measured variable. The pen and a reasonable length of chart shall be visible without opening the case.

Strip-chart recorders shall be electrically driven and have monthly or fanfold charts of not less than 100mm width which shall advance at a minimum of three selectable rates, including 20mm per hour.

Recorder inks and inking systems shall be suitable for use both in highly-humid conditions and in air-conditioning. Inks of differing colours shall be used for recording two or more quantities on the same chart.

Each recorder chassis shall be easily withdrawable from its housing for chart changing without interrupting its circuits.

Recorder scales and charts shall be in accordance with BS 1794:1952 and BS 3693:1992 or equivalent as applicable. Single-pen recorders used for more than one measurement shall have rotary-switch selectors with plates engraved to show the identity of the selected measurement.



## **G8.2 Electrical indicators and integrators**

Indicators for use with analogue signal-transmission systems shall comply with BS 89:1990 or equivalent and have an accuracy class index of 1.0. Indicator movements shall be critically damped (dead-beat). Indicators for use on more than one circuit shall have rotary switches to select the circuit, with engraved plates to show the circuit selected.

Indicators shall have circular scales or shall be of the vertical edgewise type and shall be designed to avoid parallax error. Scales shall be clearly marked in SI units and shall comply with BS 3693:1992 or equivalent. All instruments mounted on one panel or board, or in adjacent groupings, shall have similar styles of figures and letters. Dials shall be white with black scales and lettering not subject to fading.

The material for scales shall be such that no peeling or discolouration will take place with age under any environmental conditions.

Major scale marks and numerals shall be of the same size and thickness and shall be separated by not more than twenty-five minor marks. Pointers shall taper to the width of the scale marks.

Integrators shall be of the multi-digit cyclometer type. Integrators operating in conjunction with an electromagnetic or ultrasonic flowmeter shall use the pulse output from the flow transmitter. Any integrator operating from a device without a pulse output shall have an integral or separate current-to-pulse converter with sufficient adjustment of the pulse rate to avoid the use of any multiplying factor except in integer power of 10. Each integrator shall incorporate an adjustable limiter whereby any input below a pre-set value is inoperative. Unless otherwise specified, integrators shall have a minimum of eight digits with a decimal point where applicable.

## **G9.0 ALARMS AND PANEL EQUIPMENT**

### **G9.1 Alarm systems**

Alarms shall be initiated by the opening or closing of volt-free contacts which shall remain unchanged throughout the periods in which the alarm conditions exist. Alarm circuits shall be capable of conversion from open-healthy to open-alarm or vice versa by a simple modification after installation, which requires no additional parts or special equipment.

Each alarm shall initiate the operation of both visual and audible devices.

The sound intensity of each audible device shall be suitable for the maximum sound level of its environment.

Audible devices in the same room or area shall have distinguishable sounds and adjustable sound levels.

## **G9.2 Alarm annunciators**

Each alarm shall initiate a visible and audible indication of the specified condition. Unless otherwise specified, alarm indicators shall be grouped together in annunciator units each having at least 20% spare ways. Alarm indicators shall be of similar design to indicator lamps and shall have screens engraved with legends as shown in the Specification drawings or subsequently approved by the Engineer. The legend area of each indication shall not exceed 40mm high and 75mm wide.

When any alarm condition occurs, an audible device common to an alarm annunciator system shall sound and the appropriate indicator shall flash on and off. The flashing rate shall not be less than 2Hz and shall not exceed 5Hz. On pressing an integral accept push-button, the audible device shall be silenced and the flashing light shall become steady. The alarm indicator shall remain illuminated until the alarm condition ceases and a reset push-button has been operated.

The operation or acceptance of one alarm shall not inhibit the operation of the audible device or the flashing of the appropriate alarm indicator if a further alarm condition occurs. At unmanned locations, alarms operated on two or more annunciators shall require acceptance at each annunciator. Alarms shall be accepted automatically and the appropriate audible device silenced after an adjustable period of 1 to 5 minutes.

Where specified or shown in the Specification drawings, each alarm indicator shall show, by a change in colour or otherwise, the first alarm to operate in a sequence of near-simultaneous occurrences and this state shall revert to the unilluminated only after the condition has become normal and a 'first-up-reset' push-button has been operated.

An integral 'test' push-button shall be provided to illuminate each lamp in the appropriate group and to operate the audible device but shall not cause a spurious alarm condition on any other annunciator.

Alarm circuitry shall be arranged so that spurious or transient alarm states persisting for less than 0.5 seconds do not initiate any action.

Alarm annunciator/indicator legends or labels shall be arranged with three lines of text as follows:

▪ top line:	location;	Example:	RESERVOIR 1
▪ middle line:	parameter;		LEVEL
▪ bottom line:	status.		HIGH

## **G9.3 Push-buttons and indicator lights**

Push-buttons in control circuits shall have shrouds, guards or other suitable means for preventing inadvertent operation.

Status-indicator lights shall be of the high-intensity LED type. Indicator lights shall be of a design which allows easy LED replacement from the front. Indicator lights shall be easily visible above the ambient light level when viewed from within an included angle of 120 degrees. LEDs shall be chosen to ensure clear discrimination between the energised and de-energised states and to ensure an average working life of not less than 3000 hours. A

‘lamp-test’ push-button shall be provided for each group of indicator lights.

The colours of push-buttons and indicator lights on instrument panels shall be as follows:

Duty	Push-button	Signal lamp
Start or on (energise)	Green	—
Stop or off (de-energise)	Red	—
Open valve	Black*	—
Close valve	Black*	—
Accept	Black	—
Lamp test	Black	—
Reset	Black	—
Motor running (energised)	—	Red
Motor stopped (de-energised)	—	Green
Valve open	—	Red
Valve closed	—	Green
Urgent alarm	—	Red
Non-urgent alarm	—	Yellow
Plant healthy or ready for use	—	White

\* Panel-mounted push-buttons for valve operation shall be coloured black, unless otherwise agreed with the Engineer, with the duty clearly defined by legend on an associated label.

#### **G9.4 Analogue signal transmission**

Unless otherwise specified, analogue signal-transmission systems shall be in accordance with BS EN 60546-1:1993 and shall use a signal of 4mA to 20mA dc. Transmitting devices shall have integral indicators to monitor the output signal or connections suitable for use with a portable test meter. Transmitters shall be capable of meeting the performance requirements laid down in the appropriate part of IEC 60770-1:1999.

#### **G9.5 Analogue process controllers**

Analogue controllers shall use solid-state components and shall have outputs containing three terms with negligible interaction. The controller fascia shall have measured value, set value and output indication, manual set-value and output controls, auto/manual switch for control mode and remote-local transfer switch for set-value control. Manual control stations shall have measured-value and set-value indication, local/remote switch and control available lamp indicator.

Each controller shall have the means to restrict its output signal to a predetermined, fully adjustable band so that the regulating device is not moved to unsafe positions. The adjustment of these safe operating limits shall be by means of accessible, clearly marked, internal components. A continuously adjustable proportional band of not less than 5 to 500% shall be provided. Integral and derivative action times shall be adjustable over ranges which shall not be narrower than 6 seconds to 25 minutes and 0-to 10 minutes respectively. If the integral or derivative action times' adjustments are in steps, the ratio of successive steps shall

not exceed 2. The controls used to set the P, I and D values may be at the front of the instrument or mounted internally in an accessible position.

Each controller shall be designed so that in the event of failure, it shall be possible to plug a portable manual station into the controller case and to control the regulating device manually.

Controller design shall ensure automatic procedure-less, bumpless transfer whenever the instrument is switched from "auto" to "manual" or vice versa.

Controller action shall be adjustable from direct to reverse and vice versa by the operation of an internal switch. Analogue process controllers shall be capable of meeting the performance requirements laid down in the appropriate part of BS EN 60546-1:1993.

## **G9.6 Programmable logic controllers**

### **G9.6.1 General**

A programmable logic controller (PLC) shall be any digitally-operating electronic apparatus which uses a programmable memory for the internal storage of instructions for performing particular operations (e.g., logic, sequencing, timing, counting, analogue and arithmetic). This apparatus shall control, via digital and/or analogue input/output modules, various items of plant or processes and provide inputs to other controllers and to associated data acquisition systems. A PLC shall comprise a central processor, input/output interfaces, logic memory, data storage memory and a programming device and shall have the necessary input and output facilities to provide correct interfacing with plant to achieve the specified system operation.

A PLC shall have immunity to mains-borne and radiated electrical interference. Input interfaces shall be optically isolated and digital integrated circuits shall use the latest hybrid semiconductor technology in keeping with industry standards.

The highest possible level of "user friendliness" shall make PLC programming, interrogation and operation simple and easy to understand.

A PLC shall have diagnostic routines to identify any component and circuit failure and to neutralise the effects of any such failure.

### **G9.6.2 Memory**

PLC program and data memory shall be provided with a minimum of six months integral battery back-up.

A minimum of 20% spare programme memory and 20% spare data register memory shall be available when final commissioning is complete. In addition, the memory shall be expandable, using expansion modules, to provide a further increase in capacity of at least 50% for future use.

### **G9.6.3 Diagnostics**

PLCs shall be provided with diagnostic capabilities to identify failures to the circuit board level. Diagnostic indication shall as a minimum, consist of notification of processor failure,

input or output module failure, communications failure, and battery low. these conditions shall also be available as outputs from the outstation for panel indication. These diagnostics shall all be available as digital outputs for remote indication.

#### **G9.6.4 Communications**

PLCs shall be capable of connection and incorporation into a network of devices for data communication. The communication protocol shall include a state-of-the-art error detection scheme to ensure error-free data transmission and reception. The communication protocol shall include repeated attempts at error-free transmission before a network device (node) is declared as "failed".

Where dual redundant communication facilities have been specified, interface facilities shall be provided in all PLCs for connection to the dual redundant communication system. The communication system shall automatically take action such that a single interface failure does not render the PLC unable to communicate.

Communication failure at a network node shall not effect communications at any other node.

Software development facilities shall be provided for defining, modifying and monitoring the communication network.

PLCs shall contain sufficient communication ports such that a portable programming device may be connected and operated without disconnecting other wiring.

#### **G9.6.5 Input/output**

PLCs shall be fitted with input and output circuits to interface with field devices for data acquisition and control. Input and output circuits shall be arranged on plug-in modules to facilitate replacement. Plug-in input and output modules shall be fitted with connects which allow replacement of the module without disconnection of field interface wiring. All field inputs, both analogue and digital, shall be optically isolated.

Inputs and outputs for any particular set of duty/standby equipment shall be arranged over multiple I/O cards wherever possible such that a failure of a single I/O card does not prevent the operation or monitoring by the PLC of more than one device of the set.

When commissioning is complete, PLCs shall have a minimum of 20% spare inputs and outputs of each type (ie digital inputs, digital outputs, analogue inputs and analogue outputs).

Input and output capacity shall be expandable, using additional input and output modules, to give a minimum of a further 50% additional inputs and outputs of each type for future use.

The Contractor shall be responsible for considering each output load in detail to ensure that the loading capabilities of the PLC are adequate.

#### **G9.6.6 Operator interface**

All programming of a PLC shall be possible via integral or portable plug-in programming devices which shall be supplied with each instrument. The programming device shall also provide local manual control as well as the facility to interrogate the PLC for more detailed diagnostics than those previously mentioned.

The programmer keyboard shall have keys for controlling and editing functions and for entering arithmetic, timer, counter, basic and special instructions and numerical values. Programming shall be simple to understand and carry out. A key switch or other approved security facility shall be provided to restrict access to the program to authorised persons.

Complete software of the latest version and revision shall be provided, fully loaded and operational, on the portable programming device.

#### **G9.6.7 Failure**

Any control circuit output of a PLC shall be de-energised or neutralised whenever a failure of a circuit, component or power supply occurs in the input or output loop associated with the particular output. The equipment shall automatically detect failures of input circuits and output devices and take action to avoid any unsafe or operationally-undesirable condition.

#### **G9.7 Signal-conditioning devices**

Signal-conditioning devices shall include isolators, amplifiers, current-to-pulse and pulse-to-current converters, arithmetic modules, trip amplifiers and similar units.

Each device shall be designed for mounting within an enclosure using a mounting plate, rack or rail. The operating power supply shall be a nominal 110V ac or 24V dc. An indication of 'power supply on' shall be provided at the front of each unit.

Input and output circuits shall have impedances to suit the signal sources and loads with which they operate. Each analogue input and output circuit shall have independent zero and span adjustments. Set-points on the instrument front shall be fully adjustable by means of a knob with an engraved lid. Input, output and power circuits shall be mutually isolated up to 1000V rms and from earth.

The states of relays used in conjunction with digital inputs or outputs shall be indicated at the front of the unit. Analogue inputs or outputs shall be indicated on the front.

Each device shall be immune to normal industrial interference and RF up to 400MHz.

#### **G10.0 MISCELLANEOUS EQUIPMENT**

##### **G10.1 Vibration monitoring**

Permanently-installed vibration monitoring of pump units shall comply generally with the requirements of BS 4999-142:1987 for the monitoring of vibration or rotating machines.

Vibration transducers shall be of the piezoelectric accelerometer constant-current type.

Each transducer shall be supplied factory-calibrated, complete with a calibration curve showing the measured frequency response typically over the range 5kHz to 20kHz.

The transducer shall be housed in a stainless-steel housing sealed to IP 67 minimum complete with the measuring cell and pre-amplifier device. The transducer case shall be provided with a threaded stud for machine mounting. The stud shall be part of the case and shall be not less

than M10. The mounting arrangements shall be uniform across the whole plant.

Transducer sensitivity shall be typically 100 mV/g at 80Hz and the transverse sensitivity of the device shall not exceed 5% of that in the measured direction. The minimum operating temperature range for vibration transducer shall be  $-25^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $+100^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

Vibration monitors shall be mounted in a monitoring panel adjacent to the plant being measured. The monitors may be either backplate or rack-mounted units.

Each monitor shall be provided with the following:

- integral indication of vibration measurements (calibrated in acceleration of velocity as appropriate to the machine malfunction conditions);
- relay outputs for high and extra high vibration, with relay operation derived from the analogue vibration signal and settings adjustable over the full range of the instrument;
- time-delay settings adjustable between 3 and 30 seconds for each relay;
- analogue output of 4mA to 20mA representing the RMS value of the acceleration signal.

Accuracy of the monitor system shall not exceed  $\pm 5\%$  of full scale.

## **G10.2 Hygrometers**

Hygrometers shall comprise a probe assembly, amplifier-transmitter and indicator unit.

The probe assembly shall operate on the capacitance principle and shall be suitable for measurement of the moisture content of air or process gas as specified. The probe assembly shall be mounted in the gas sample pipework which shall be fitted with a pressure gauge or manometer. Process gas shall be discharged to an approved point.

The amplifier-transmitter and indicator unit shall be suitable for wall mounting or panel mounting as required. Wall-mounting units shall have enclosures with a degree of protection of IP54 to BS 5490.

The indicator shall be calibrated with an arbitrary 0–100 linear scale and a dew point scale engraved from  $-80$  to  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  unless otherwise specified. Two high-value alarm points shall be provided with indicator lights, alarm set point adjustment, lamp test button and voltage-free contacts for re-transmission of both conditions.

The transmitter shall produce a 4–20mA output signal proportional to the linear indicator scale.

The overall accuracy of the hygrometer shall be better than  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  and the repeatability shall be better than  $\pm 1.5^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

## **G11.0 INSTALLATION OF INSTRUMENTATION**

### **G11.1 Installation of instruments and sensing devices**

Each instrument and sensing device shall be installed in accordance with the recommendations or instructions of the manufacturer for the particular application. Each mounting position shall be chosen to give correct operation of the equipment, faithful reproduction of the

quantity to be measured, ease of operation, reading, maintenance and servicing, freedom from any condition which could have adverse effects and with particular regard to the safety of personnel and plant. Each item of plant shall be levelled and securely fixed to the surface, bracket or framework on which it is mounted.

Instruments to be installed in areas of high or low temperature or high humidity shall be provided with adequate protection from adverse effects.

### **G11.2 Instrument air supply**

The instrument air supply shall comply with Standards ISA–S7.3 and ISA–S7.4 issued by the Instrument Society of America. The installation shall include inter alia:

- two identical electric motor drive oil-free air compressor sets complete with all associated equipment;
- at least two compressed-air receivers each complete with all accessories including gauge, drain valve, alarm and control pressure switches, isolating and check valves;
- at least two after-coolers, filters and pressure regulators.

The air supply shall be dry, clean, oil-free and of constant, uninterrupted pressure and of adequate quality to suit the service requirements.

Intake filters shall be protected against adverse conditions. All components shall be designed and installed to ensure the minimum by-passing.

Cooling water circuits for compressors and after-coolers shall have twin filters. Filters shall be readily accessible and shall be designed to prevent the passage of scale.

The system shall permit extension at a future date and shall include connections with air-tight, screw-down valves and air-tight blank flanges.

The systems shall be designed so that either compressor may be selected as the duty unit and the other compressor as the stand-by unit. Manual stop and start controls shall be provided for the duty compressor and thereafter the compressor shall be controlled automatically by the pressure-unloading valve associated with it to maintain the pressure in the air receivers within the limits necessary for the satisfactory operation of all associated plant.

The stand-by compressor shall start automatically and deliver air to the air receivers if the pressure in the air receiver falls to a pre-set value which shall be above the minimum value necessary for the satisfactory operation of all associated plant. The stand-by compressor delivery shall be controlled automatically by its own pressure-unloading valve. The system capacity shall be adequate for the maximum service demand including an allowance for the pressure drop in pipework and fittings, repeated operation of several heavy loads simultaneously and air leakage. Compressors shall be sized so that one compressor working alone is capable of supplying the maximum total quantity of air thus calculated plus a margin of 10%.

Air receivers shall be sized so that with one receiver out of service, system pressure fluctuations do not affect the efficient operation of the plant under any circumstances and ample air reserve is provided for changing compressors.



Air compressor sets shall be designed for continuous operation over long periods. They shall not require dismantling for maintenance at intervals of less than 24 months.

Each compressor shall be driven by an electric motor rated to provide not less than 5% power in excess of the maximum power absorbed by the compressor working at any possible operating condition. Each motor and compressor shall be mounted on a common baseplate. Coupling may be by vee-belts or other approved arrangement. Flange-mounted direct-coupled motors may be used but drives incorporating gears will not be accepted.

Each compressor delivery shall be controlled by an electrically-actuated pressure-unloading valve which shall be opened and closed automatically at pre-set, adjustable pressures. Each pressure-unloading valve shall have two sets of volt-free contacts for the remote indication of valve fully-open and fully-closed respectively. When a pressure-unloading valve is open, the compressor delivery shall be discharged to atmosphere through an efficiently-silenced outlet.

Each compressor intake shall have an efficient air filter and silencer which shall be sized to prevent excessive pressure drop.

Air intakes shall draw air from inside the compressor room. The Contractor shall provide two air filters for mounting in the outside wall of the compressor room, to filter the air drawn in to the compressor room. Filters for compressor and compressor-room air intakes shall be designed for easy cleaning, shall be readily accessible and shall not require cleaning in normal operation more frequently than once every 30 days.

Compressor starters shall be mounted on a panel in the compressor room.

Primary cooling water systems shall use fresh water. The primary circuit may be cooled by a heat exchanger using sea-water as the secondary coolant or by other approved means such as a radiator. Contractor shall provide all pipework, isolating valves, temperature control valve and fittings to connect the equipment to the fresh-water and seawater systems. The maximum seawater temperature at any point in the system shall not exceed 45°C. Easily visible indication of primary and secondary (if used) cooling-water flow shall be provided.

Each compressor shall be fitted with easily visible instruments to indicate jacket cooling-water exit temperature. For each measurement a safety control shall be provided which shall prevent further operation of the tripped machine until all conditions are normal and a manual reset push-button has been operated. Indications of compressor running and tripped shall be provided in the control room and/or as detailed hereafter.

Air receivers shall comply with BS 5169:1992 and shall include a corrosion allowance of at least 2mm. Fittings shall comply with BS 1123-1:1987.

Air receiver drain connections shall be fitted with readily-accessible screw-down valves near the receivers and shall be piped to the nearest suitable point of the drainage system. Each air receiver shall be thoroughly cleaned internally and externally by shot blasting. The interior shall then be painted with phosphoric zinc oxide paint.

Manholes shall be provided so that the interior of each vessel is readily accessible for maintenance. Each air receiver shall be provided with a pressure gauge and an additional readily-visible indication of receiver pressure shall be provided in the compressor room.

Initiating contacts shall be provided for operating the compressor-unloading valves, to start the stand-by compressor and to indicate in the control room the occurrence of abnormal conditions.

The Contractor shall provide all necessary pipework, valves, drains, filters and fittings to form a complete system to supply clean dry compressed air to each pneumatic instrument. The pipework in the compressor house shall include connections from compressors to receivers which shall be so arranged that any compressor or receiver may be withdrawn from service with no interruption to the air supply.

Each compressor shall be able to charge either or both of the air receivers. Pipework shall be so sized that the maximum pressure drop anywhere in the system does not exceed 5% of the nominal system working pressure. Where practicable, air pipework shall be installed with a fall in the direction of air flow. Branch connections shall be taken from the top of the air main. Each branch connection shall be fitted with a readily-accessible screw-down isolating valve next to the air main. Automatic drain air filters, shall be fitted in each branch connection and at all low points on the system and drains shall be piped to the nearest suitable point of the drainage system.

Each compressor shall be tested in accordance with BS 1571-2:1975. Each air receiver shall be tested in accordance with the relevant section of BS 5169:1992.

### **G11.3 Pneumatic actuators, positioners and converters**

Pneumatic actuators, positioners and electro-pneumatic converters shall be suitable for operation from the air supply specified. Each device shall be installed with readily accessible isolating and regulating valves and an air filter. Control valves with diaphragm actuators shall be installed in horizontal sections of pipework with their actuators vertical and above the pipeline.

### **G11.4 Plant instrument piping**

Instrument piping shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the specific applications. All connections from plant pipework and vessels to instruments shall be made with grade 316 seamless stainless steel 15mm outside diameter, minimum wall thickness 1.5mm. Air supply connections shall be Sch 40 galvanised and screwed carbon steel of 10mm NB minimum. For groups of 2 to 5 instruments, the air header shall be 15mm NB minimum and for groups of 6 to 20 instruments, 25mm NB minimum. For each instrument, a 12mm block valve, filter and regulator shall be provided irrespective of the size of the supply header. Other piping shall be in compression-jointed, PVC-covered, heavy-gauge seamless copper soft-annealed in accordance with BS 1057:1996 or equivalent or as otherwise specified.

Fittings shall be designed for use with the particular piping and service conditions. Sample water pipework and fittings for water quality monitoring shall be sized and selected to suit service conditions generally in the range of 12mm to 25mm NB and shall be in uPVC or grade 316 stainless steel as applicable. Sample pipework and fittings for dissolved oxygen meters shall be in grade 316 stainless steel or titanium.

Piping shall be neatly run and shall be clipped to walls, ceilings or other building structures or shall be supported on galvanised mild steel tray. Piping routes shall be chosen to avoid

obstructing traffic or personnel movement through the plant and to avoid interference with accessibility for the removal of plant. Piping shall be routed away from hot environments, places of potential fire risk or mechanical abuse. Piping routes shall also avoid areas where liquid spillage or vapour or gas leakage may occur. Piping and supports shall avoid vibrating structures or equipment. Piping shall slope continuously upwards or downwards with a minimum slope of 1 in 10 and in accordance with any other recommendation of the equipment manufacturer and sharp bends shall not be used. Drain and vent facilities shall be provided at the lowest and highest points respectively according to service.

Pipework to pressure gauges, transmitters and switches shall incorporate fluctuation dampers, instrument isolating valves and plant connections with either isolating valves or valve manifolds suitable for portable test gauges or manometers. Pipework to differential-pressure-operated devices shall include a five-valve manifold near the device. Pipework to steam, oil and high pressure lines shall have to isolating valves near the instrument. Tapping points for instruments connected by impulse pipework shall have additional isolating cocks. Level meters used with an air-reaction system shall be installed at the highest point of the piping. Variable-area meters shall have isolating valves upstream and downstream with a drain valve between the upstream valve and the meter.

Pipework shall be arranged to minimise the transmission of vibration. Pipework to steam lines or vessels shall contain a syphon, loop or condensate chamber and shall be lagged. Each instrument and accessory shall be supported independently of its pipework.

All pipework for fluids which may contain solid particles shall contain joints and bends of the 'cross' type for rodding-through and shall contain valves and connections for blowing down. The length of any line under vacuum shall be as short as possible. Gas-analyser sample-venting lines shall be sloped downwards away from the instrument or other precautions taken to prevent condensate flowing back to the cell.

Impulse piping to flow meters shall be run in accordance with BS 1042-1.4:1992. Capillary tubing shall be clipped to mild steel, galvanised tray and shall not be pierced, stretched or twisted. The minimum bending radius shall be 100mm. Any excess length shall be neatly coiled at the measuring instrument and clipped in coils of not less than 200mm diameter.

Process fluids which solidify or are highly viscous at the lowest ambient temperature shall be prevented from entering impulse pipes and instruments by the use of seal pots, which shall be filled with a suitable inert, non-toxic liquid which shall not evaporate under process conditions, solidify, mix or react with the process fluids. If large displacements of fluid are possible, seal pots shall be provided close to the process connections. Seal pots shall have isolating, filling and venting valves.

Before connecting any instrument to its associated impulse or air supply pipe work, all isolating valves shall be opened and the pipe work blown through to clear any matter. Each line shall be flow-tested for continuity, followed by a pressure test at 2 bar, or as otherwise specified using clean dry air. Instruments and other ancillary equipment shall be connected immediately after the successful completion of the pressure test, if possible, and all open tube ends shall be sealed against the ingress of moisture.